



**Connect
Navigator
Connect Nav**



The car is fitted with the infotelematic Connect Nav or Connect systems which include a highly performing cellular phone with voice commands, an extremely reliable sound system and a CD Changer.

The car can also be fitted with a satellite Navigator integrated with the audio system.

The Connect Nav and Connect systems and the Navigator are designed according with the specific features of the passenger compartment and with a personalised design that blends with the styling of the dashboard.

These systems are installed in a user-friendly position for the driver and the graphics on the front panel make it easy to quickly locate the controls which facilitates the use of them.

The pages that follow contain the instructions for use of Connect system, Navigator and Connect Nav, which we advise you to read carefully and always keep within reach (e.g. in the glove compartment).

So, enjoy your reading and have a good journey.

CONNECT

GENERAL INFORMATION	5	DIRECT FREQUENCY ENTRY	20
ADVICE	6	STATION STORAGE	21
ROAD SAFETY.....	6	TRAVELSTORE FUNCTION.....	21
RADIOFREQUENCY	6	RECALL OF STORED STATIONS	21
RECEPTION/TRANSMISSION CONDITIONS	6	TUNING SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT	22
CARE AND MAINTENANCE	7	MONO-STEREO SWITCHOVER.....	22
COMPACT DISCS	7	EON FUNCTION	22
CONTROLS	8	TA FUNCTION	23
SWITCHING THE SYSTEM ON	9	CD-CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)	24
AUDIO MODE (WITHOUT TELEPHONE)	9	CD INSERTION/EJECTION	24
AUDIO AND TELEPHONE MODE	9	CHOOSING A CD.....	27
LANGUAGE SELECTION	10	CHOOSING A TRACK	27
REMOVING THE SIM CARD	10	FAST FORWARD/BACKWARD.....	27
SOUND SYSTEM	11	RANDOM PLAYING OF THE TRACKS	27
CONTROL DESCRIPTION	11	PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTIONS	28
CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL.....	17	SETUP MENU ACTIVATION	28
CHOOSING AUDIO FUNCTION	18	RADIO MENU ACTIVATION.....	31
RDS FUNCTION	18	TELEPHONE	36
AF FUNCTION.....	19	GENERAL INFORMATION	36
REG FUNCTION.....	19	PIN AND PUK CODES	36
WAVEBAND SELECTION	20	SIM CARD INSERTION	36
TUNING	20	PIN CODE ENTRY	37
		SIM CARD UNLOCKING	37

TO START A CALL	37	ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM	89
EMERGENCY CALL.....	38	SECRET CODE ENTRY	89
CONTROL DESCRIPTION	39	ANTITHEFT SYSTEM LED	90
TELEPHONE	43	TECHNICAL DATA	91
RAPID SELECTION OF A TELEPHONE NUMBER.....	43	AMPLIFIER	91
REDIALLING.....	46	RADIO	91
ACCEPTING/REFUSING A CALL	46	TELEPHONE	91
INCOMING CALL.....	47	TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE	91
CALL WAITING/SWITCHOVER	48	GLOSSARY	92
PHONE BOOK.....	49		
TELEPHONE CALLS TO FOREIGN COUNTRIES.....	49		
PHONE BOOK MENU.....	50		
PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTIONS	56		
SETUP MENU ACTIVATION	56		
CALL MENU ACTIVATION	62		
TARGASYS SERVICES	73		
SETTINGS MENU ACTIVATION.....	74		
CONNECT ACTIVATION.....	75		
CONNECT USE	79		
“MEDICAL ADVICE” SERVICE	79		
“ROAD ASSISTANCE” SERVICE	82		
INFOMOBILITY SERVICES.....	82		
“CONNECT” FUNCTION	84		
“FOLLOW UP” FUNCTION	84		
RECALLING STORED MESSAGES	87		

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Connect system with integrated sound system and telephone complies with safety rules issued by competent government bodies and organizations.

The telephone integrated with the sound system works on the basis of GSM mobile telephone standards. Such standards determine the use of cellular phones in Europe and other countries, but they have been extended also to other world countries (e.g. VDE DIN 0848).

With this telephone it is possible to make the same telephone connections which can be made with a mobile phone. In order to make a telephone call it is necessary to have a SIM card and to be in a place served by the GSM 900 network, with enough sign field intensity.

Emergency calls

In order to guarantee the maximum safety, the telephone is set so that the "Emergency 112" call can always be activated, even if the SIM card is not inserted in the slot.

The telephone can make and receive calls when the Connect system is on, when the vehicle is in an area served by a GSM 900 network and when the field intensity is sufficient. That is why connection cannot be assured in every condition. Do not rely only on the radio telephone for vital emergency calls, as in case of request for medical assistance.

ROAD SAFETY

You are recommended to learn how to use the different functions of the Connect and in particular of the radio (e.g. storing stations) before starting to drive.



WARNING

Too high a volume when driving can put the driver's life at risk and that of other people. Therefore the volume should always be adjusted in such a way that it is always possible to hear noises of the surrounding environment (e.g. horns, ambulance, police sirens, etc.).

ADVICE

Carefully respect rules and regulation determining the use of telephones inside cars. Telephone calls when driving shall only be made in case of emergency and using the voice commands. Anyway you are advised to park the car and to use the telephone only when the car is stationary.

RADIOFREQUENCY

The telephone is certified on the basis of GSM standards and complies with safety value limitations for protection against radiofrequency radiations.

The telephone use can alter medical equipment functions (hearing aids, pace maker, etc.) if not adequately protected.

Always turn the telephone off when it is forbidden to use it or in areas with high explosion danger such as filling stations, chemical plants and near explosive agents or blasting charges.

RECEPTION/TRANSMISSION CONDITIONS

Reception conditions (for the radio) or reception/transmission conditions (for the telephone) change constantly when driving. Reception can be disturbed by the presence of mountains, buildings, bridges, particularly when far away from the broadcaster receiver or the radio link for the telephone.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

The structure of the system ensures long years of operation with no need for particular maintenance. In the event of a fault, contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services.

Clean the front panel and display only using a soft, dry antistatic cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface.

Handle the display with care. Do not use pointed or hard objects which might scratch and damage it.

Clean the display with a soft, clean and dry cloth. Do not use solvents which might corrode and damage the display.



Be careful not to knock the display with pointed or hard objects and avoid touching with the hands. Do not press on the display when cleaning. If it gets broken, do not touch the fluid which might come out. In case it gets in contact with the skin, wash it immediately with water and soap.

COMPACT DISCS

If a Compact Disc is used on the Sound system, remember that the presence of dirt or marks on Compact Discs may cause skipping when playing and poor sound quality. The same happens if Compact Discs are bent by accident.

To obtain optimum playing conditions we give the following advice:

- only use Audio Compact Discs with the brand:



- carefully clean all Compact Discs of any fingerprints and dust using a soft cloth. Support Compact Discs on the edges and clean from the centre outwards;

- never use chemical products for cleaning (e.g. spray cans, antistatics or thinners) as they might damage the surface of Compact Discs;

- after listening to them put Compact Discs back in their boxes to avoid marking or scoring which would cause skipping when playing;

- do not expose Compact Discs to direct sunlight, high temperatures or damp for prolonged lengths of time to prevent them from bending;

- do not stick labels or write on the .

CONTROLS

A0B0238m

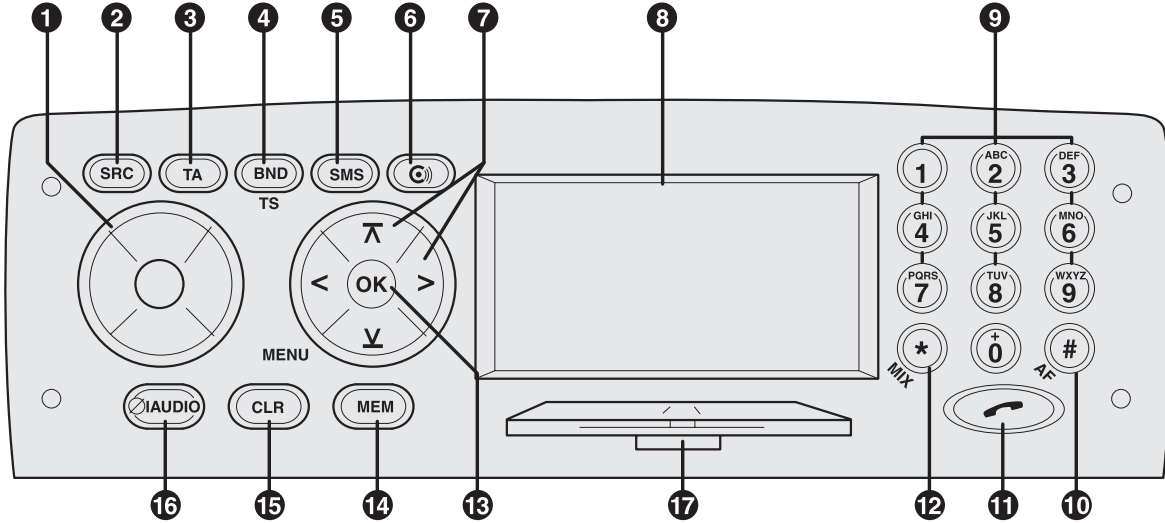


fig. 1

SWITCHING THE SYSTEM ON

AUDIO MODE (WITHOUT TELEPHONE)

Press knob (**ON/OFF**) (**1-fig. 1**) to turn on the system. On the display appears the request for inserting the SIM card support.

WARNING If the SIM card support is not inserted in the related housing (**17-fig. 1**), the system automatically turns off after 15 seconds. That is why it is important to insert the card support within the established time to prevent the system from turning off.

When the system is turned on for the first time, or after the battery disconnection, the request for the code number entry appears on the display: apply the same procedure described in paragraph "Secret code entry" in section "Antitheft protection system".

AUDIO AND TELEPHONE MODE

When a valid SIM card is inserted the telephone and its functions are activated.

Inserting SIM card

Proceed as follows:

— lightly press the SIM card outer edge until a light resistance is felt, then release pressure and the support will be ejected;

— place the SIM card in the special slot with the **integrated chip upwards facing the system**;

— insert the card support in its housing (**17-fig. 1**) until a light resistance is felt and a click is heard, which means that it is held in;

— the system turns on. If the insertion is correct, the request for the card PIN code entry is confirmed (see paragraph "PIN code entry" in section "Telephone"), provided that the related request for PIN code entry has been activated.

LANGUAGE SELECTION

Usually the system displays texts in English.


It is possible to view texts in different languages in the following way:

– in “Radio” mode, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to display the “DSC – Radio” menu

– the menu pointer ► stops on “Setup”

– confirm the selection by pressing **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

– the **Setup** menu pointer ► stops on the “**Language**”; function; confirm it by pressing **OK** (13-fig. 1);

– select the required language by pressing keys  (7-fig. 1) and confirm by pressing **OK** (13-fig. 1);

– press **SRC** (2-fig. 1) to quit the set-up menu.

REMOVING THE SIM CARD

Lightly press the SIM card support (17-fig. 1) in the travel direction and release it as soon as a light resistance is felt. The card-holder will come out thus making the SIM card accessible.

WARNING Do not try to remove the SIM card support (17-fig. 1) from its housing by pulling it! It might get damaged.

SIM card care

In order to assure perfect card operation, check that the contacts are always clean, do not touch them with the hands and clean them with cotton soaked with alcohol, if required.

Do not leave the card exposed to direct sunlight.

SOUND SYSTEM

CONTROL DESCRIPTION (fig. 1)

1. VOLUME ON/OFF

Press the key to turn the system on/off. Insert the empty card support to switch the sound system on (**17-fig. 1**) or insert the card support with the SIM card within 15 seconds after pressing the key.

If the above operation has not been performed correctly in that period of time, the system turns off.

Switching on/off with SIM card support

If the system has been turned on with the knob (**1-fig. 1**), it will be possible to switch it off and on by inserting the SIM card support.

Switching on/off by starting the engine

For versions/markets where applicable, the sound system can be automatically turned on/off when the engine is started/turned off. When the engine is turned off, a double beep warns the driver that the card support or the SIM card should be removed before leaving the car. If the "Timer" function has been set up, the sound system keeps on working for the set time.

If the engine is turned off during a telephone call, the system keeps on working until the call is ended. After turning the engine off (SIM card support inserted), the system will keep on working. Press key (**1**) after the double beep and the system will be switched on. After the system has been working for an hour, it automatically turns off to prevent draining the car battery.

Operation with timer

If the "Timer" function has been activated, the sound system keeps on working for the set time (0 to 90 minutes) after the engine has been turned off, and then it turns off automatically (see paragraph "Programmable functions - Switching off with timer").

Volume adjustment

To increase/decrease the volume, turn the knob (**1**) clockwise/anticlockwise.

The selected volume level will be shown on the display.

When the sound system is turned on, the volume level can be the one selected before turning it off or the set one (see paragraph "Programmable functions - volume at power-on").

2. SRC

Operating mode select key: Radio, CD-Changer and AUX (auxiliary audio source, where fitted).

When the telephone is on it is possible to select an audio function if no call or dialling is in progress.

3. TA

When "TA" (Traffic Announcement) is displayed, only traffic news broadcasters can be listened to.

To switch this function on/off press the **TA** key.

4. BND/TS

This key can be used to go through storing levels/wavebands FM, FMT (Travelstore), MW and LW.

Travelstore additional function

In order to store the nine most powerful stations with Travelstore, press the **BND**, key until a beep is heard, or until "**TRAVELSTORE**" starts blinking on the display.

5. SMS

This key can be used to view a new incoming SMS message on the display.

6.


This key can be used to access Telematic Services managed by **Targasys**.


7. Multifunction keys

Radio


 **Automatic tuning**

 upwards

 downwards

 downwards/upwards by steps (in FM only with AF off).


Only for FM:

 Seeking broadcasting stations with AF mode on e.g. NDR 1, 2, 3, 4, N-joy, FFM, ANTENNA...


CD-Changer


 **CD selection**

 next CD

 previous CD

Track selection

 next track: press briefly the key; forward (audible tone): keep the key pressed.

 previous track: press briefly the key for two or three times; play a new track: press briefly the key.

Further functions

The multifunction key (7) can perform other functions when keys **AUD (16)** or **OK/MENU (13)** are selected.

8. Radio Display (fig. 2)

- a) AAA** - Station name
- b) FM** - Radio band
- c) LD** - Low frequency emphasizing at low volume levels (not available with Bose Hi-Fi system)

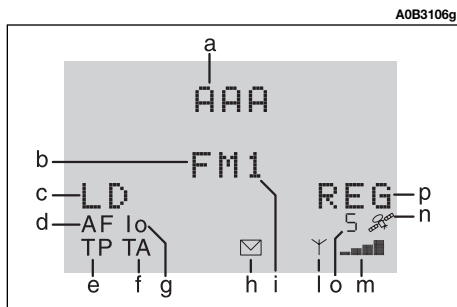


fig. 2

- d) AF** - Alternative frequency with RDS
- e) TP** - Traffic news service (while listening)
- f) TA** - Priority to traffic announcements
- g) Io** - Radio station tuning sensitivity
- h) ☐** - Mailbox (only for telephone function)
- i) 19/T9** - Station key (1 - 19)/Travelstore (1 - 9)
- l) Y** - Connection to GSM network
- l) ▬▬▬▬** - GSM field intensity
- n) ☐** - Satellite
- o) 5** - Number of received satellites
- p) REG** - Regional programme

9. Selection keys Radio

Direct frequency entry

To enter the required frequency using the selection keys proceed as follows:

With the "Radio" mode on, press "0" and enter the required frequency starting from the first digit. It is possible to enter only frequency values ranging from 87.5 to 108 MHz. The point is not needed when entering the value. To interrupt entering press the **CLR (15)** key; to confirm the entry press **OK (13)**.

Station storage

The following number of stations can be stored in the different wavebands (FM, FMT, MW and LW):

FM	19
FMT (FM-Travelstore)	9
MW	9
LW	9

To store stations keep one of the station keys pressed until the beep is heard.

To store a two digit number, briefly press key “1”, then press the second key within 2 seconds and keep it pressed until a beep is heard.

Station recall

Set the waveband (for frequency modulation select “FM” or “FMT”) and press the corresponding key.

To recall the stations ranging from 10 to 19, first press “1” and then briefly press the second digit within 2 seconds.

CD-Changer

It is possible to select directly the CDs inside the CD-Changer.

10. #/AF

Alternative frequency with RDS on:

When “AF” is displayed, with RDS on, the radio is automatically tuned to the station with the strongest signal that is broadcasting the same programme.

Turning the AF function on/off

Press the #/AF (10-fig. 1) key for about 2 seconds until hearing the beep.

The display will show the function status:

“REGIONAL ON”:
function on

“REGIONAL OFF”:
function off

11. ☎

Telephone function switchover, (see “Control description” in “Telephone” section).

12. */MIX

Radio

Choosing automatic station tuning sensitivity

To turn this function on, briefly press the */MIX key (12-fig. 1). If “lo” is displayed, standard sensitivity is set and therefore only stations with excellent reception are sought.

If “lo” is not displayed, all stations are sought.

MIX CD (random playing of CD tracks)

With this function on, the CD tracks are played in random sequence.

CDs are selected according to the number sequence order.

MIX OFF

The MIX function is off.

Repeatedly press **MIX** until the required function is displayed.

13. **OK/MENU** **DSC (Direct Software Control)**

Use the **OK/MENU** key to change basic programmable functions and then store them.

To programme: briefly press key (13-fig. 1).

To select function: press key $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1).

To display the set value: press key (13-fig. 1).

To change the value: press key \langle/\rangle (7-fig. 1).

To store: press key (13-fig. 1).

To quit the programming section: press **CLR** (15-fig. 1).

If you exit the programming section by pressing **CLR** (15-fig. 1), but without pressing **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) before leaving it, changed values will not be stored.

For further information see paragraph "Programmable functions".

14. **MEM**

In Radio mode

Recall of stored stations.

In CD-Changer mode

Recall of inserted CDs.

In Telephone mode

Recall of "Phone book" menu (see "Control description" in "Telephone" section).

15. **CLR**

The **CLR** key (15-fig. 1) shall be used as follows:

– to quit the point in the programming menu currently considered. Press it again to quit the programming section;

– to end a phone call ("Telephone" mode), as an alternative to key \curvearrowright .

Pressing **CLR** during programming will not save changed settings.

16. **ØI/AUDIO**

Treble adjustment

Proceed as follows:

– press key **ØI/AUDIO** (16-fig. 1);

– briefly press key $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1)

Bass adjustment

Proceed as follows:

– press key **ØI/AUDIO** (16-fig. 1);

– briefly press key \langle/\rangle (7-fig. 1)

Balance function

To adjust sound distribution between the (right/left) speakers in the car, proceed as follows:

- press key **Ø1/AUDIO (16-fig. 1)**;
- press twice key **(7-fig. 1)**;
- press key **< (7-fig. 1)** to set volume “plus” on **left** speaker;
- press key **> (7-fig. 1)** to set volume “plus” on **right** speaker.

Set values are shown on the display. The last setting will be stored automatically.

Briefly press the key to deactivate the selected function. If no adjustment is made, the selected function will be automatically deactivated after about 8 seconds.

Fader function

To adjust sound distribution between the (front/rear) speakers in the car, proceed as follows:

- press key **Ø1/AUDIO (16-fig. 1)**;
- press twice key **(7-fig. 1)**;
- press key **↔ (7-fig. 1)** to set volume “plus” on **front** speakers;
- press key **↵ (7-fig. 1)** to set volume “plus” on **rear** speakers.

Loudness function

To turn the loudness function on/off, press key **Ø1/AUDIO (16-fig. 1)** for about 1 second until hearing the beep.

The display will briefly show the function status:

“LOUDNESS ON”: function on

“LOUDNESS OFF”: function off

For further information see item “Loudness” in paragraph “Radio menu activation” in this section.

17. SIM card support

To make the system work the SIM card support must be inserted.

Press the card support until the release click is heard. Release the card support, insert the SIM card properly and then push the card support down until the locking click is heard.

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL (where provided) (fig. 3)

The main functions of the sound system are repeated on the steering wheel, which facilitates control.

1. Volume highering key
2. Volume lowering
3. Mute key
4. key for selecting frequency bands (FM, FMT, MW, LW) and audio sources (Radio – CD-Changer – auxiliary audio source)
5. Multifunction key:
 - Radio: manual station tuning
 - CD-Changer: to select next CD/track.

6. Multifunction key:
 - Radio: manual station tuning
 - CD-Changer: to select previous CD/track.

Volume adjustment keys (1), (2) and (3)

The volume adjustment keys (1) and (2) and Mute function on/off (3) work just like the sound system corresponding keys.

Key for selecting radio frequency and audio sources (4)

To cyclically select the radio frequencies and audio sources briefly and repeatedly press key (4).

Available frequencies/sources are: FM, FMT, MW, LW and CDC.

Multifunction keys (5) and (6)

The multifunction keys (5) and (6) shall be used to listen preset radio stations or to play next/previous CD/track when the CD-Changer is on.

Press key (5) to select next radio station or to play next CD/track.

Press key (6) to select previous radio station or to play previous CD/track.

A0B0357m

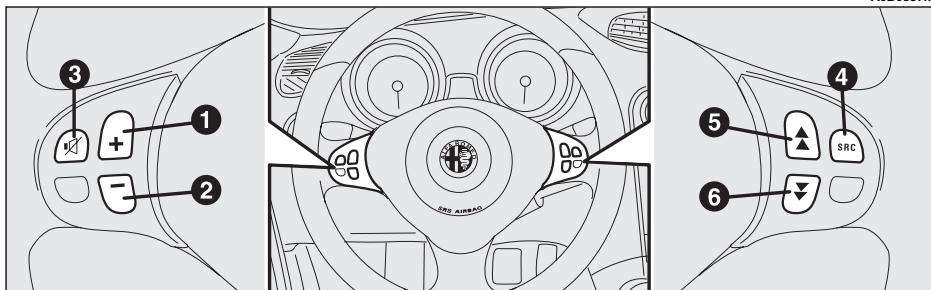


fig. 3

CHOOSING AUDIO FUNCTION

Pressing the **SRC (2-fig. 1)** key it is possible to select one of the following sources:

- Radio
- CD-Changer (where fitted)
- Auxiliary source (where fitted).

Pressing the **SRC** key it is possible to pass from a phone call to the last audio source selected.

Phone calls have priority over any other function, it is therefore possible to pass to an audio function only if no call is in progress.

Repeatedly press the **SRC (2)** until the required function appears on the display.

The CD-Changer function can be selected only if the CD-changer is installed.

If the CD-Changer has no CDs or the CD selected is illegible, the display will show the message "**NO CD**".

It is possible to pass to another source only when no CD player is connected. To do this, the message "**AUX ON**" should appear on the display.

RDS FUNCTION (RADIO DATA SYSTEM)

RDS (Radio Data System) is a service provided by radio stations to offer improved listening comfort in the FM band.

A growing number of radio stations broadcast RDS information besides their program.

As soon as broadcasters are recognised, their acronym and regional identification appear on the display. With the RDS system, station keys are also used to identify different programs. In this way, it is possible not only to know exactly the type of program you are listening to, but also to choose directly the required program.

AF FUNCTION (ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCY)

With AF ON the system activates automatic tuning of the optimum frequency of the station chosen. When this function is on the display shows “**AF**”.

To turn the **AF** function on/off, press briefly the **#/AF (10-fig. 1)** key.

During seeking for the optimum frequency of the station chosen the volume is completely lowered.

If when turning the system on or recalling a stored station, the display shows “**SEARCH**”, it means that the system is searching for an alternative frequency.

“**SEARCH**” disappears when the alternative frequency is found, or when the search reaches the frequency band end.

If the preset station can no longer be received properly, choose another station.

Manual tuning - alternative frequencies

To keep on receiving the same program in different areas, it is necessary that the current broadcasting station has already been selected at least once and that the **AF** function is on (**AF** displayed).

To use this function, apply the following procedure:

- press the **BND (4-fig. 1)** key for 2 seconds to store the nine stations with the strongest signal (Travelstore);
- press key **#/AF (10-fig. 1)**;
- seek the required program using the **</>** key (**7-fig. 1**).

REG FUNCTION (REGIONAL PROGRAMS)

Certain national stations broadcast local (regional) programs, different from region to region, at determinate hours of the day.

Turning the REG function on/off

To turn the **REG** function on (radio tuned to FM), proceed as follows:

— press the **#/AF key (10-fig. 1)** for about 1 second until the display shows the function status:

“**REGIONAL ON**”: function on

“**REGIONAL OFF**”: function off

When the regional function is on, on the display right side appears “**REG**”.

WARNING When the function is off (**REGIONAL OFF**), the sound system uses the alternative frequency table for automatic tuning to the optimum frequency of the station chosen.

WAVEBAND SELECTION

The following bands can be selected:

FM 87,5 - 108 MHz,

MW 531 - 1602 kHz and

LW 153 - 279 kHz.

– To select the required band, press repeatedly the **BND (4-fig. 1)** key.

TUNING

Station seeking \nearrow/\searrow

Press the multifunction key (**7-fig. 1**):

\nearrow upwards

\searrow downwards

\langle/\rangle left/right (only with “FM” if AF is off).

Pressing \nearrow/\searrow the sound system will tune automatically to the next station.

Keep key \langle/\rangle (left/right) pressed for fast tuning to next or previous stations.

Manual tuning with \langle/\rangle

Manual tuning is possible only if the **AF** function is off (“**AF**” and “**REG**” not displayed). If the **AF** function is on, turn it off as described previously.

For manual tuning proceed as follows: press key \langle/\rangle (**7-fig. 1**), frequency will change according to preset steps (backward or forward).

Keep key (**7-fig. 1**) \langle/\rangle (left/right) pressed for fast tuning.

DIRECT FREQUENCY ENTRY

With FM and FMT wavebands it is possible to enter frequencies directly.

To do this starting from the “Radio” mode:

– press key “**0**”;

– enter the required frequency starting from the first digit. There is no need for the point.

The entry can be deleted by pressing **CLR (15-fig. 1)**, and is confirmed by pressing **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

STATION STORAGE

It is possible to store the following maximum number of stations for each waveband:

FM	19
FMT (FM-Travelstore)	9
MW	9
LW	9

Proceed as follows:

- select the required band with key **BND/TS (4-fig. 1)**;

- tune to the required station using key **(7- fig. 1)** (automatically $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ or manually \langle/\rangle);

- keep the key of the required station pressed for about 1 second until hearing the beep;

If you want to store a station with a two-digit storing place:

- briefly press key “**1**” and then press the second key within 2 seconds until hearing the beep.

Now the station is stored.

The number given to the station is shown on the display.

WARNING In the event of a station already stored, the related station number and the storing place start blinking on the display (if you have chosen the same storing place).

TRAVELSTORE FUNCTION

With this function it is possible to store the nine FM stations with the strongest signal in decreasing order of intensity of the signal in the frequency band tuned. Such function is particularly useful during journeys.

Turning the function on

Press key **BND/TS (4-fig. 1)** for about two seconds: “**TRAVELSTORE**” will start blinking on the display.

The nine FM stations with the strongest signal are automatically stored in the “**T**” storing level (Travelstore). Once the procedure has been completed, the system tunes to the best received station.

If required stations can also be stored manually in the Travelstore level (see previous paragraph).

RECALL OF STORED STATIONS

To recall stored stations proceed as follows:

- repeatedly press the **BND/TS (4-fig. 1)** key , until the required frequency band appears on the display;

- briefly press the related station key.

If you want to recall a station with a two-digit storing place (e.g. storing place 19), first press “**1**” and then press “**9**” within 2 seconds.

Stations can also be recalled in the following way:

– repeatedly press the **BND/TS (4-fig. 1)** key, until the required frequency band appears on the display;

– press the **MEM (14-fig. 1)** key: the display will show all the stations stored in the selected frequency band;

– select the required station with keys **↖/↗ (7-fig. 1)**;

– press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

TUNING SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT

To adjust tuning sensitivity, press the ***/MIX** key (**12-fig. 1**) for about 1 second: the display will show **“lo”**.

When **“lo”** is on, only stations with excellent reception are tuned.

With **“lo”** off, all the stations are tuned.

To select the sensitivity level see paragraph “Programmable functions - tuning sensitivity” in “CD-Changer - CDC” section.

MONO-STEREO SWITCHOVER (ONLY FM)

When you turn the system on, this automatically sets to the Stereo mode.

If reception is not good, the system switches over to Mono.

EON FUNCTION

With the EON function (Enhanced Other Networks) it is possible to tune automatically into the radio station which is broadcasting traffic announcements.

Many FM stations regularly broadcast traffic bulletins for their related reception area.

Programs broadcasting traffic announcements send a signal which is recognised and analysed by your sound system.

As soon as the sound system recognises such a signal, **“TP”** (Traffic Program) appears on the display.

There are other stations besides these, even if they do not have a real traffic announcement service. But the RDS-EON functions give you the chance to receive this service from another broadcaster belonging to the same group.

If you are tuned to such a station and you want to give priority to traffic announcements, “**TA**” must be lit on the display.

In this case the programme of the station being heard will be temporarily interrupted to receive the traffic announcement. When traffic announcement is over, the radio will tune to the station heard previously.

TA FUNCTION (TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT)

Turning the TA function on/off

Press the **TA (3-fig. 1)** key.

When this function is on the display shows “**TA**”.

If the **TA (3-fig. 1)** key is pressed during a traffic announcement, the **TA** function will be interrupted only for this announcement.

Then the system goes back to its previous selection. Anyway, the **TA** function stays on.

WARNING During traffic announcements certain keys are disabled.

TA volume adjustment

The volume is preset by the Manufacturer. Anyway, the volume level can be changed with the “Radio menu” (see paragraph “Radio menu activation” in section “Programmable functions”).

Sound warning (beep)

When the **TA** function is on (“**TA**” shown on the display), a beep is heard 30 seconds after you have left the program reception area.

The beep is heard also when a stored station key without TP signal is pressed.

If you want to exclude the warning beep use one of the following two methods:

1) tune to a station broadcasting traffic announcements, press key (**7-fig. 1**) or press the station key used to store a **TA** program.

or

2) press the **TA (3-fig. 1)** key (“**TA**” disappears from the display).

Automatic TA stations tuning (CD-Changer on)

If you leave the broadcasting area of a traffic announcement program while you are listening to a CD, the sound system automatically tunes to a new TA station.

CD-CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)

CD INSERTION/EJECTION

Versions with CD loader

Loading CDs (saloon versions) (fig. 4)

To insert CDs in the loader apply the following procedure:

- 1) pull lever (A) to open one of the ten CD-changer compartments;
- 2) insert the CD with the label set properly; otherwise the CD player will not work;

3) close the compartment;

4) repeat the same procedure for the other CDs.

Inserting the CD loader into the CD player

Move the sliding lid (B-fig. 5) to the right until it blocks.

Fit down the loader (A-fig. 6) into the CD player observing the direction of the arrow marked on the loader side.

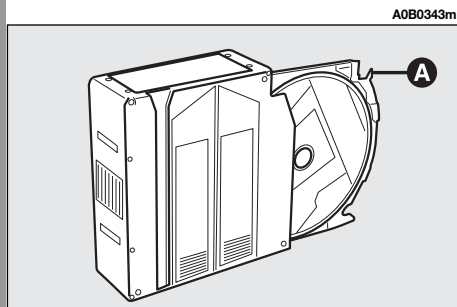


fig. 4

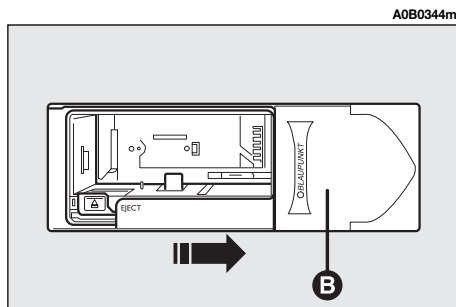


fig. 5

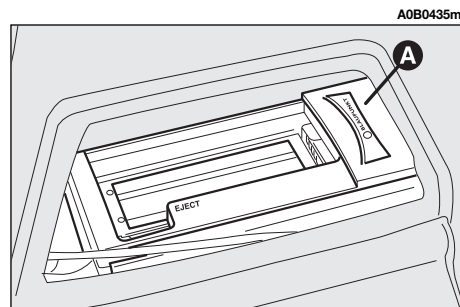


fig. 6

Close the sliding lid (**D-fig. 7**) after inserting the CD loader to prevent dust or foreign matters infiltration into the CD player.

Ejecting the CD loader from the CD player

Open the sliding lid (**B-fig. 5**), press the eject key **EJECT (E-fig. 8)** on the CD player: the loader will be ejected partially.

Remove the loader with care.

Close the sliding lid.

Ejecting Compact Discs from the loader

Eject CDs one after the other by pulling the lever corresponding to each CD.

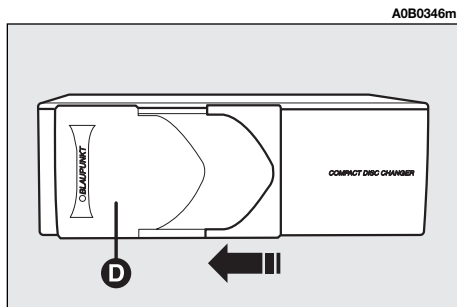


fig. 7

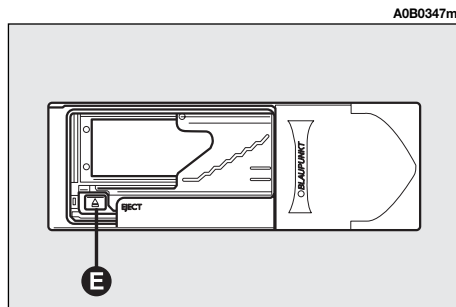


fig. 8

Versions with slots (CD slots)

The CD-Changer is located in the boot inside the left oddment compartment (fig. 9).

WARNING To turn the CD-Changer on, just press one of the buttons set aside the CD slots; the button leds corresponding to the slots loading a CD will turn on.

Inserting/ejecting CDs

To insert CDs: insert the CDs gently, with the label upwards, into the CD-Changer slots to the stop; the powered loading system will load CDs automatically.

To eject CDs: press and keep pressed the button set aside the slot of the CD to be ejected.

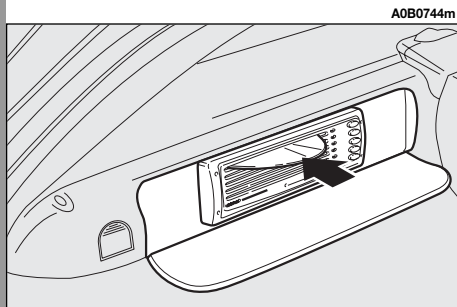


fig. 9

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION CD Changer

The sound system is fitted with a CD Changer antitheft protection system consisting of a four-digit secret code. The protection system makes the CD Changer unusable.

Entering the secret code

Entry of the secret code is required to make the CD Changer work each time it is connected to the sound system.

Connecting the CD Changer to the sound system, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds, followed by four dashes "----".

The secret code consists of four figures from 1 to 6, each corresponding to one of the dashes.

To enter the first digit of the code, press the corresponding button of the preset stations (from 1 to 6). Enter the other code digits in the same way.

If the four figures are not entered within 20 seconds, the display will show again the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds and then four dashes "----". This is not to be considered as an incorrect code entry.

After entering the fourth digit (within 20 seconds), the CD Changer starts working.

If a wrong code is entered, the radio sounds a beep, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and then four dashes "----" to warn the user that it is necessary to enter the correct code.

If a wrong code is entered for three consecutive times the display will show the words "**CDC WAIT**". During the timeout (1 hour) the sound system can however be used and it is possible to select another sound source or to turn the sound system off.

If another sound source is selected it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure after 1 hour. The timeout will start from 1 hour again if the sound system has been turned off.

When timeout is over if the sound system is in CD Changer mode the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure. If the sound system is not in CD Changer mode, no message will be displayed. Select CD Changer, the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds: now the new code entry procedure can be started.

CHOOSING A CD

A CD can be selected in three ways:

- pressing keys $\overleftarrow{\text{A}}/\overrightarrow{\text{A}}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the previous/next CD;
- pressing key (**9-fig. 1**) corresponding to the number of the required CD;
- pressing the **MEM** (**14-fig. 1**) key: the display will show a menu with the list of loaded CDs:
 - press keys $\overleftarrow{\text{A}}/\overrightarrow{\text{A}}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to choose the required CD;
 - press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm and play the required CD.

CHOOSING A TRACK

To choose a CD track, proceed as follows:

- press > (**7-fig. 1**) to select next track;
- press < (**7-fig. 1**) to select previous track.

FAST FORWARD/BACKWARD

Proceed as follows:

- for fast forward keep key > (**7-fig. 1**) pressed;
- for fast backward keep key < (**7-fig. 1**) pressed;

RANDOM PLAYING OF THE TRACKS (MIX function)

Press briefly key ***/MIX** (**12-fig. 1**): all the tracks in the previously selected CD will be played in random sequence.

Once all the tracks have been played, the second CD tracks will be played in random sequence and so on until all CDs in the CD Changer are played.

Random playing will then restart.

To stop random playing press the ***/MIX** (**12-fig. 1**) key again.

PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTIONS

With this system it is possible to adapt (and store) certain settings to your needs.

Storing settings

To store settings and to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**), press the **OK/MENU** key (**13-fig. 1**).

To go back to the previous screen without storing new settings press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

To quit the “DSC-Radio” menu and go back to the Radio mode, press **SRC** (**2-fig. 1**).

Changing settings

To change settings, proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- press ∇ or \blacktriangle (**7-fig. 1**) to select the menu item to be changed;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;
- press **</>** (**7-fig. 1**) to change setting.

Clearing settings

To clear setting, press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).
New setting will not be stored.

SETUP MENU ACTIVATION (**fig. 11**)

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**): the pointer \blacktriangleright stops next to “**Setup**” (**fig. 10**);
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;
- or
- press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) to quit the menu and go back to the “DSC-Radio” menu.

As far as setup menu important items are concerned, you can change setup only after entering the access code (see paragraph “Changing the access code”).



fig. 10

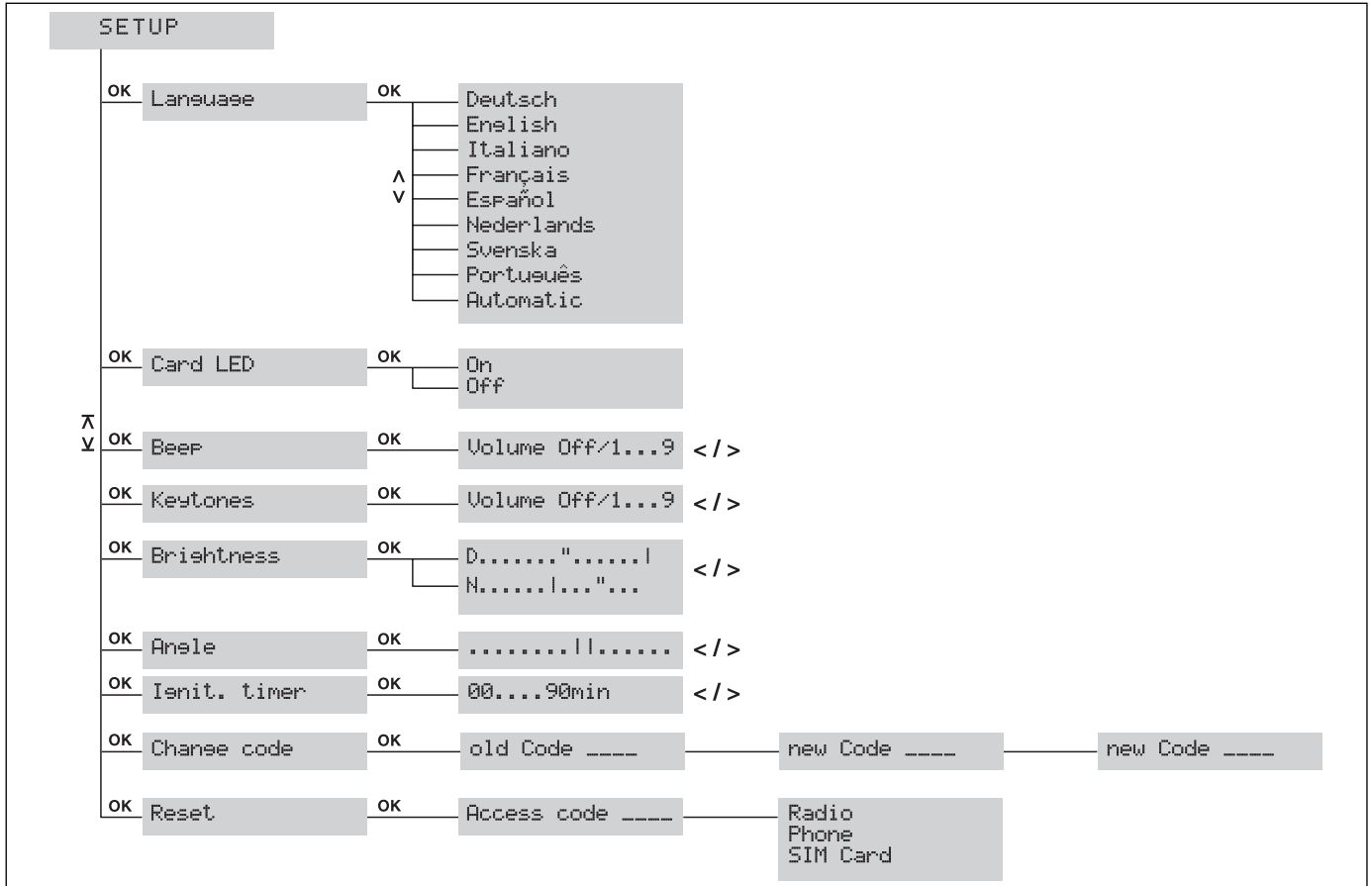


fig. 11

Language selection

Language

This function is used to choose the language for displayed messages. If no SIM card is inserted the display shows "**AUTOMATIC**" and the messages will be displayed in **English**.

If SIM card is inserted, messages will be displayed in the language set with the SIM card.

Antitheft system led

Card LED

Use this function to set the blinking of the SIM support led.

You can choose between led **On** and **Off**. For safety reasons you are advised to select **On**, so that the card support (**17-fig. 1**) >) starts blinking when the system is off and the SIM card support is not inserted.

Sound warning volume (beep)

Beep

Pressing any key of the front panel for over 1 second will sound a beep.

This function shall be used to adjust the beep volume between **0** (muted) and **9** (max. volume).

Key tones

Keystones

When a key is pressed it is possible to hear a confirmation tone.

The volume can be adjusted between **1** and **9** (Off).

Adjusting display brightness

Brightness

With this function it is possible to change the display brightness for the day (**D**) or the night (**N**) according to instrument panel lighting.

Display readability (angle of vision)

Angle

With this function it is possible to improve the display readability by changing the angle of vision (user's point of view).

Switching off with timer (power-on time)

Enit. timer

With this function it is possible to program the system to stay on for maximum 90 minutes after the engine has been turned off.

0 = function off.

Changing the access code

Change code

The access code provides access to the most important functions of the “DSC Radio menu” (**fig. 10**). The default code, set by the Manufacturer is “0000”.

WARNING If you change the code do not forget to write the new code down!. Do not choose four equal digits (e.g. “1111”) or four digits in sequence (e.g. “1234”).

To change the code proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- use keys **↖/↘ (7-fig.1)**, to select “Setup”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- use keys **↖/↘ (7-fig.1)**, to select “Change code”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- use keys **(9-fig. 1)** to enter the new code;
- use keys **(9-fig. 1)** to enter the new code again;
- press **SRC (2-fig. 1)** to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

Settings reset (Reset)

Reset

This option is displayed only when the SIM card support is inserted.

This function shall be used to reset separately all settings performed in Radio and Telephone mode and on the SIM card.

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- use keys **↖/↘ (7-fig.1)**, to select “Setup”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- use keys **↖/↘ (7-fig. 1)**, to select “Reset”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- use keys **(9-fig. 1)**, to enter the access code;
- use keys **↖/↘ (7-fig. 1)**, to select the required setting;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** twice;
- press **SRC (2-fig. 1)** to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

RADIO MENU ACTIVATION (fig. 12)

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu;
- press **↘ (7-fig. 1)** and select “Radio” (**fig. 10**);
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to quit the menu and go back to the “DSC-Radio” menu.

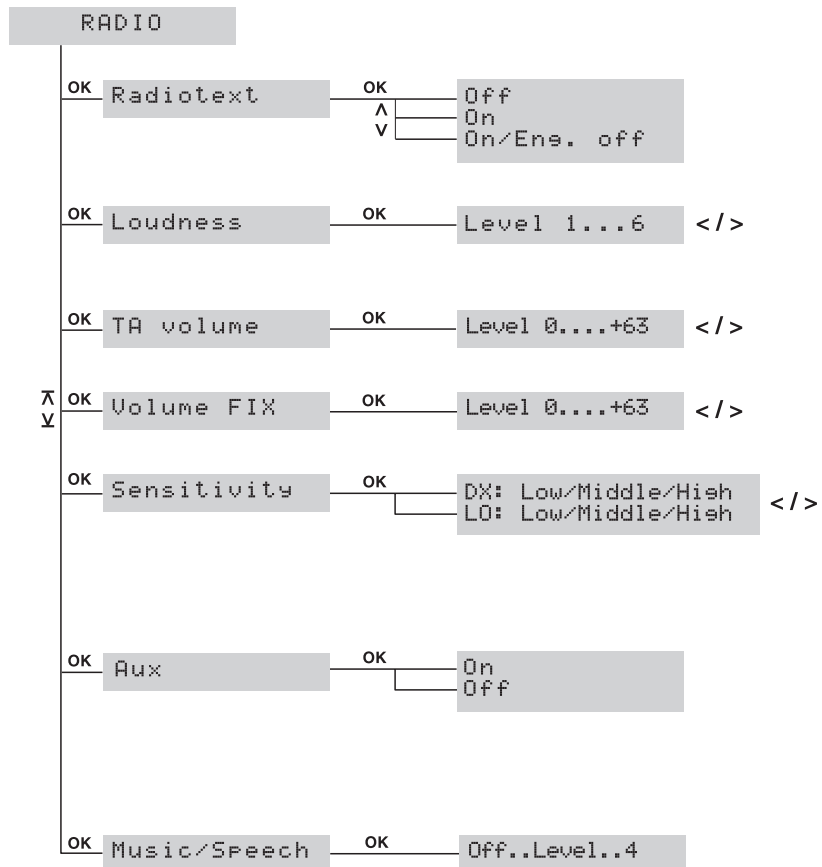


fig. 12

Radiotext

Radiotext

Radiotext is a service provided by certain RDS stations which gives: the name of the radio station, info on the broadcast programme or the title of the broadcast track.

Off: function off

On: function on

On/Eng.Off: function on only after starting the engine.

Loudness

Loudness

This function emphasises bass tones when listening at low volume

- **LEVEL 1** - min. level.
- **LEVEL 6** - max. level.

TA volume adjustment

TA volume

This function is used to set between “**00**” (min.) and “**63**” (max.) the traffic announcement (**TA**) volume and the buzzer volume (“**beep**”), indicating the lack of traffic info reception.

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- press \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**Radio**” (**fig. 10**);
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;
- press \sphericalangle / \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**TA volume**”;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– press keys \sphericalangle / \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**), or turn the **VOLUME ON/OFF** knob (**1-fig. 1**) to set the system volume at power-on;

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– press **SRC** (**2-fig. 1**) to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

In this way traffic announcements will be played at the volume set although you are listening at a lower volume.

Volume at power-on

Volume FIX

This function shall be used to set the volume between “**00**” (min.) and “**63**” (max.), when turning the system on.

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- press \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**Radio**” (**fig. 10**);
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**Volume FIX**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press \langle/\rangle (**7-fig. 1**), or turn the **VOLUME ON/OFF** knob (**1-fig. 1**) to set the system volume at power-on;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **SRC (2-fig. 1)** to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

WARNING Selecting “**Last Volume**”, the volume will be the last one selected when turning the system off.

Tuner sensitivity adjustment

Sensitivity

This function shall be used to adjust the tuner sensitivity.

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- press \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) and select “Radio” (**fig. 10**);
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**Sensitivity**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select **DX** (distant) or **LO** (local);
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press keys \langle/\rangle (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required setting (**High/Middle/Low**);
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **SRC (2-fig. 1)** to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

Auxiliary audio source

Aux.

With this function it is possible to connect an auxiliary audio source (e.g.: portable CD players, MiniDisc players or MP3 players) to the system.

Auxiliary audio sources shall be connected using the special cable. At Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo you can find CD-Changers, Mini-Disc or MP3 players and their cables.

To connect/disconnect the auxiliary audio source, proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (**fig. 10**);
- press \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) and select “**Radio**” (**fig. 10**);

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press **↖/↘** (7-fig. 1) and select **“Aux”**;
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press **</>** (7-fig. 1) to select the required settings (**On** or **Off**);
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press **SRC** (2-fig. 1) to quit the “DSC-Radio” menu.

To select the connected auxiliary audio source press **SRC** (2-fig. 1).

Music/voice equalizer

Music/Speech

With this function it is possible to activate and adjust automatically the equalizer tones (bass and treble) when the radio is tuned to an RDS station which broadcasts programs with an equalizing level different between music and voice.

Off: equalizer off;

Level 1: linear sound adjustment (no increase/decrease of bass, treble and loudness);

Level 4: different settings for volume, bass and treble with loudness off.

Make a sound check to choose the best setting.

Traffic announcements are always played with the **“Speech”** setting.

For music/voice equalizing, proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to display the “DSC-Radio” menu (fig. 10);
- press **↘** (7-fig. 1) and select **“Radio”** (fig. 10);
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press **↖/↘** (7-fig. 1) and select **“Music/Speech”**;
- press **OK** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press keys **</>** (7-fig. 1) to perform the required setting;
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;
- press **SRC** (2-fig. 1) to quit the DSC-Radio menu.

TELEPHONE

GENERAL INFORMATION

This telephone works like a mobile cellular phone. Therefore, to make a call you need a SIM card and the area you are crossing shall be covered by GSM 900 network with enough field intensity.

WARNING The network services described in this section (e.g. incoming call) are managed by the telephone, but their availability depends on the network and the type of contract agreed with the network provider.

WARNING If power supply is lower than the minimum preset threshold, phone call quality is not assured. For this reason, turning the engine on during a telephone call might interrupt it.

PIN AND PUK CODES

The SIM card enables free access to the telephone network only through the personal identification number (PIN code). This code and the PUK code (Personal Unlock Key) are communicated to you when you buy the SIM card.

The PIN code can be deactivated or changed (see “PIN code” in paragraph “Set-up menu activation” in this section).

SIM CARD INSERTION

Press the knob (**1-fig. 1**) and switch the system on. Push the card support slightly (**17-fig. 1**) into the system until a light resistance is felt. The card support will come out. Now insert the SIM card in the special slot with the **integrated chip upwards, in system direction.**

Push the SIM card support rear part lightly into the system until a light resistance is felt and audible click is heard, indicating that the card support is locked.

PIN CODE ENTRY (Personal Identification Number)

When the display shows “**ENTER PIN**”, proceed as follows:

— use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the code starting from the first digit;

— after having entered the code, press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** or **#/AF (10-fig. 1)**: when typing the PIN code, the display shows “*****”.

After entering the correct PIN code the display will show “**CODE OK**” and the system will turn on to the last source selected (Radio, Telephone, CD Changer).

If you enter a wrong PIN code the display will show “**WRONG PIN CODE**” and then “**ENTER PIN**”.

WARNING After three unsuccessful PIN code entries, the SIM is locked. See next paragraph for SIM unlocking.

SIM CARD UNLOCKING

To unlock the SIM card, enter the 8-digit PUK code (Personal Unlock Key).

When inserting a locked SIM card the display will show “**ENTER PUK**”; proceed as follows:

— use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the code starting from the first digit;


— after entering the code, press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** or **#/AF (10-fig. 1)**.

TO START A CALL

To make a phone call the following conditions are required:


— the display shall show symbol Υ (fixed, not blinking);


— the SIM card shall be properly inserted in its slot.

In this case to start a call just press key  (**11-fig. 1**): the display will show the selected network.

If the system is not yet in Telephone mode:

— briefly press  (**11-fig. 1**);

— use keys (**9-fig. 1**), to dial the phone number and then press again  (**11-fig. 1**) to start the call;

To end the call press briefly  (11-fig. 1) or CLR (15-fig. 1).

WARNING For telephone calls with the GSM network, it is always necessary to dial the STD code. Only the service numbers of your provider and the voice box numbers can be dialled with no code.



EMERGENCY CALL

This system enables to make at any moment emergency calls by dialling the **112** which is the emergency call number worldwide.

Emergency calls can always be activated even without a **valid SIM card**: GSM-900 network coverage is just required.

Dialling the **112** will send a call to the next emergency station.

Proceed as follows:

- switch the system on and then insert the card support or the SIM card;
- press  (11-fig. 1): if the SIM card inserted is not valid, the display will show **"No valid SIM card"**;
- use keys (9-fig. 1), to dial **112**;
- press  (11-fig. 1).

During emergency calls give information as detailed as possible.

WARNING Make emergency calls only when there is a real emergency. Emergency call misuse is liable to punishment.

CONTROL DESCRIPTION (fig. 1)

1. VOLUME ON/OFF

Press the on/off key.

Turn the knob:

- to adjust volume during “hand-free” calls;
- to adjust **TA** volume during “hand-free” calls;
- to the set “ringer” temporary volume.

2. SRC

Briefly press the key: the telephone function is deactivated and the last audio operating mode is automatically restored (Radio, CD-Changer, auxiliary audio source).

Switchover to an audio source is possible only if no call or dialling is in progress.

If you press **SRC** for about 1 second, the telephone will result busy.

3. TA (Traffic Announcement)

Pressing **TA** during a call, priority to traffic announcements is deactivated for the whole call duration.

4. BND/TS

Press this key to switchover from “receiver” to “handfree” call (microphone/speaker functions).

5. SMS

Press this key to display a new SMS.

6.

Press this key for **Targasys** Telematic Services.

7. Multifunction keys



These keys enable the following:

- to scroll quickly the stored phone numbers;
- to select stored SMS;
- to select “Phone book menu” and “Setup menu” options;
- to move the cursor when entering data.



These keys enable the following:




- to display messages completely;
- to select stored SMS;
- to select “Phone book menu” and “Setup menu”;
- to move the cursor when entering data.




8. Display

The display will show the following information:

- main telephone menu (**fig. 13**);
- PIN code entry (**fig. 14**).

Displayed symbols have the following meaning:

- a)**  telephone link
- b)**  connection to GSM network: it indicates that the telephone is connected to a network different from that of the SIM card (Roaming). If the symbol is blinking, there is only a network connection, but no access right. In this case it is possible to make only the emergency call.
- c)**  GSM field intensity indication

- d)**  number of received satellites
- e)**  satellite
- f)**  mailbox
- g)** xxxxxxxx name of network provider
- h)*** code entry (one asterisk for each entered digit)

9. Selection keys

Brief press: for entering a number

Prolonged press (about 2 seconds): for fast selection of the first 9 numbers stored on the SIM card.

To perform this operation, press ***/MIX (12-fig. 1)**, then press key **(9-fig. 1)** corresponding to the number store position for about 2 seconds.

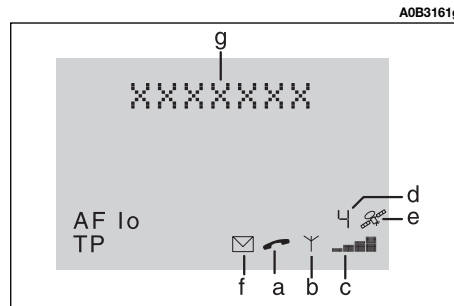


fig. 13

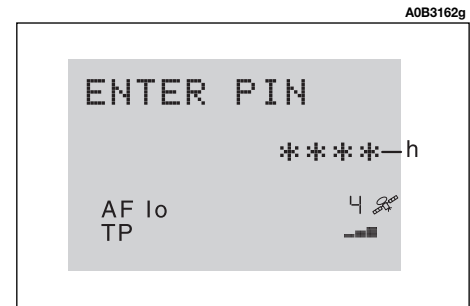


fig. 14

Entering characters/ symbols

Press repeatedly keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter letters and symbols (for further details see point "Entry start" in paragraph "Phone book menu" in this section).

10. #/AF

Press this key to enter special characters.

11.

Briefly press this key:

- to switchover to telephone function;
- to accept/refuse a call;
- to dial a phone number

Press this key for about 2 seconds:

- to deactivate the phone function;

To restore the phone function, press  again (**11-fig. 1**).

12. */MIX

Press this key:

- to enter special characters;
- to start fast selection of a number stored in the SIM card.

13. OK/MENU

Briefly press this key:

- to activate the DSC-Telephone menu and perform the required settings;
- to store new settings.

14. MEM

Briefly press this key to display the "Phone book" menu

Press this key for about 2 seconds to enter a new phone number into SIM card or phone memory.

15. CLR

Entering a digit

Briefly press this key. Press it again to clear the last entered digit.

Getting through the menu

Briefly press this key to go back to the previous menu option.

Press this key for about 2 seconds to quit the menu.

16. Ø1/AUDIO

If you press this key when the telephone is on, the microphone is excluded. Thus it is possible to speak inside the car without making the connected person hear any voice.

17. SIM card support

To use the phone, a valid SIM card shall be inserted. Valid SIM card gives access to every phone function.

With the SIM card support it is possible to make only emergency calls.

The SIM card support is also used as antitheft protection.

Connection to GSM network


To make a telephone call it is necessary to be connected to GSM network. As soon as the connection is made symbol Υ (fixed) is displayed. If signal is weak, call could be interrupted.


When symbol Υ is blinking, only emergency calls are possible.

When symbol Υ is displayed with inverted contrast, it means that you are connected to a provider different from that of the SIM card (Roaming).

TELEPHONE

Switchover to telephone function

You can pass from any function to the telephone function by pressing key  (11-fig. 1).

The network and user data are displayed when the network is received. Symbol  is not blinking.



Dialling

With phone function on, use keys (9-fig. 1) to dial the required number (dial always the code also for local calls).

The dialled number will be shown on the display.

Correcting/deleting a digit/whole phone number

To correct/delete a digit, proceed as follows:

- use keys /  (7-fig. 1) to select the required digit (the digit will start blinking);
- briefly press CLR (15-fig. 1)

Press briefly CLR (15-fig. 1) to delete the whole phone number;

RAPID SELECTION OF A TELEPHONE NUMBER

Stored phone numbers can be recalled on the basis of the name or number with which they have been stored.

The numbers that can be recalled from phone memory range between 1 and 25, those from SIM card range between 101 and 225.


The first 9 numbers can be directly recalled from the main phone menu using the keypad.

Rapid selection of a number stored in the telephone memory (Brief selection)

Press key (9-fig. 1) (1 to 9) for about 2 seconds until the required name or number is displayed.

Call is started automatically.

Rapid selection of a number stored in the SIM card

Press key /MIX (12-fig. 1) for about 2 seconds, then press key (9-fig. 1) (1 to 9), until the required name or number is displayed.

Call is started automatically.

Rapid selection of a number stored in the phone book

Proceed as follows:

- press **MEM** (14-fig. 1);
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ to select “**Find name**” or “**Find Pos.**”;
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;

Find entry by name

If “**Find name**” is selected, “**Name?**” will be displayed.

Proceed as follows:

- use keys (9-fig. 1) to enter the first three letters of the name you are looking for;
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm: the display will show the corresponding phone book section. If you enter a name not stored, the display will show the name beginning with the next letter;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1) to select the required name;
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm and call this number automatically.

Find entry by position

If “**Find Pos.**” is selected, “**Position?**” will be displayed.

Proceed as follows:




- use keys (9-fig. 1) to enter the number corresponding to the required phone number position in the memory;
 - press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm: the required number will be displayed;
 - use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1) to select another number, if required.
- For further details see “**Find entry by name**” or “**Find entry by position**” at paragraph “Phone book menu” in this section.

Rapid selection of a number from the list of last calls

The last called numbers are automatically stored in the SIM card.

Press  (11-fig. 1) to display the list of last calls.






To call one of these numbers, proceed as follows:

- use keys / (7-fig. 1) to select the required number;
- press key  (11-fig. 1) to start the call.

Rapid selection of a number from the list of last not-answered calls

Calls with no answer are stored provided that the caller has activated the number transmitting function.



To call one of these numbers, proceed as follows:

- press / (7-fig. 1) to display the list of not-answered calls;
- use keys / (7-fig. 1) to select the required number;
- press key  (11-fig. 1) to start the call.

Rapid selection of a number from the list of last calls received

Received calls are stored provided that the caller has activated the number transmitting function.

To call one of these numbers, proceed as follows:

- press  (7-fig. 1) to display the list of last calls received;
- press key  (11-fig. 1) to start the call.

Clearing the call list

This function shall be used to delete the list of not-answered calls and last calls received from the memory.

Proceed as follows:


- select the list of not-answered calls and last calls received as described previously;
- use keys \nearrow/\searrow (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required number;
- press $<$ or $>$ (**7-fig. 1**)
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm.

REDIALLING

Automatic

Automatic redialling takes place when the “**Auto. redial**” function in the “**Setup**” menu is “**ON**”.


For further details see point “Automatic redialling” at paragraph “Programmable functions” in this section.

To stop auto redialling press  (**11-fig. 1**).

Manual

Proceed as follows:

– press  (**11-fig. 1**): the last entered number will be displayed.

To start the call press again  (**11-fig. 1**).

When making or receiving a call the display light colour changes.


ACCEPTING/REFUSING A CALL

Incoming call is accompanied by a beep and by message “**Accept?**”.

If the caller number is stored in the rapid selection lists, the display will also show the associated name.

Accepting a call

To accept the call press  (11-fig. 1).

To end the call press  (11-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1)

Refusing a call

To refuse the call press **CLR** (15-fig. 1): the caller will hear the busy line signal.


Automatic answer

This function enables to accept automatically the incoming calls.



Proceed as follows to switch the function on:

- with phone function on, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu;

- select “**Setup**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;

- use key  (7-fig. 1) to select “**Auto. answer**”;

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;

- use keys / (7-fig. 1) to select the required option (**On** or **Off**) and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;

- go back to “**Setup**” menu.

INCOMING CALL

This function enables to accept an incoming call when a call is in progress.

In this case the second caller will hold on the line until the call in progress is ended.

WARNING Should the “Incoming call” function be not available, request it directly to your provider.

Accepting the 2nd call

When a call is in progress, a new incoming call will be indicated by a beep.

To accept the new call, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1): the first interlocutor will hold on the line.

Refusing the 2nd call

To refuse the new incoming call press **CLR** (15-fig. 1): the second caller will hear the busy line signal.

Muting the microphone during a call

To mute the microphone during a call, press **Ø1/AUDIO** (16-fig. 1): the display will show “**Mute On**”.

To reactivate the microphone press **Ø1/AUDIO** (16-fig. 1) again: the display will show “**Mute Off**”.


CALL WAITING/SWITCHOVER

The “Call waiting” function is used to make a new call when a call is in progress, the first interlocutor will hold on the line.

The “Call switchover” function is used to start a direct call to one interlocutor only.

Enabling the call waiting function

During the call with the first interlocutor, proceed as follows:

- press **MEM** (14-fig. 1);
- use keys (9-fig. 1), to dial the number of the second interlocutor and then press  (11-fig. 1).

Call to the second interlocutor is sent, the first one will hold on the line.

During a call with the “Call waiting” function on, it is possible to receive also a third call. To accept the third call press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1); to refuse it press **CLR** (15-fig. 1).

When accepting the third call the current one is ended.

Enabling the switchover call function

To switchover between first and second call, press **MEM** (14-fig. 1).

Conference connection

With the conference connection it is possible to talk to two interlocutors at the same time.

To implement the conference connection when a call is in progress and another one is waiting, press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).


Conference conversation is on and it is possible to talk to both interlocutors at the same time.

During the conference connection it is possible to accept another call. After the incoming call sound warning it is possible to:

To refuse the call: press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

To accept the new call: press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**), conference call participants will hold on the line.

Use the **MEM** key (**14-fig. 1**) to pass from the conference call to the conversation with the new caller.

To end the current call: press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) or  (**11 fig. 1**).

To end all the calls at the same time: press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) for over 1 second.

PHONE BOOK

During a call it is possible to enter a phone number using keys (**9-fig. 1**).

At the end of the call the entered number will be displayed and could be used later on.

NOTE When turning the ignition key to “**STOP**” during a call, the phone will go off automatically at the end of the call while the entered number will be cleared from the phone book.

TELEPHONE CALLS TO FOREIGN COUNTRIES

The GSM international standard enables to call foreign countries.

Check that your network provider allows to use the SIM card in roaming conditions.

The network provider can provide you with the list of countries having local network providers and the different tariffs.

To start a call, you must first dial the international code. The first two figures of the international code can be replaced by “+” pressing “**0**” on the keypad (**9-fig. 1**) for about one second.

When you are abroad

Who calls you from your country of origin can dial the number without international code.

Who calls you from a country different from that of origin must dial the international code of your country.

When you call another country (also that of origin) you must dial the international code.

When you call users in the country where you are there is no need to dial the international code.

PHONE BOOK MENU (fig. 16)

The phone book menu is used to store, change, clear and recall telephone numbers.

Records are stored in the telephone memory or in the SIM card and can be recalled for a rapid selection.

The system can store up to 25 records.

The number of records possible in a SIM card depends on the type of card used.

To recall the phone book menu:

– press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1).

The DSC menu functions (telephone main menu) are displayed (fig. 15):

– **Setup**

– **Menu**

– **Phone book**

– press \sphericalangle (7-fig. 1) and move the cursor \blacktriangleright to “**Phone book**”;

– press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm.

To scroll vertically the displayed options use keys \sphericalangle / \sphericalangle (7-fig. 1).

Pressing **CLR** (15-fig. 1) you quit this menu and you go back to phone menu.

Pressing **CLR** (15-fig. 1) gain will display the main phone menu.

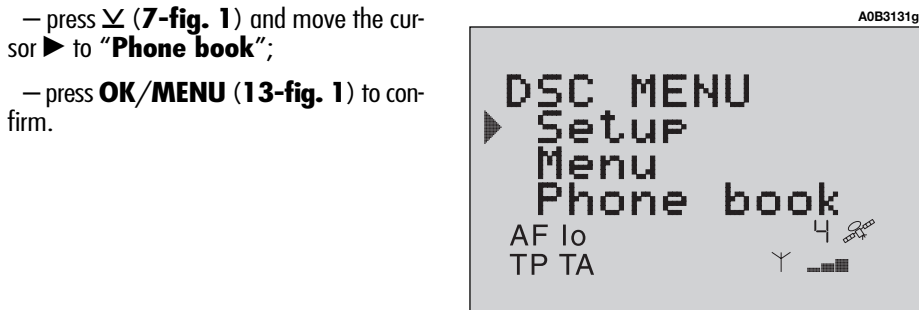


fig. 15

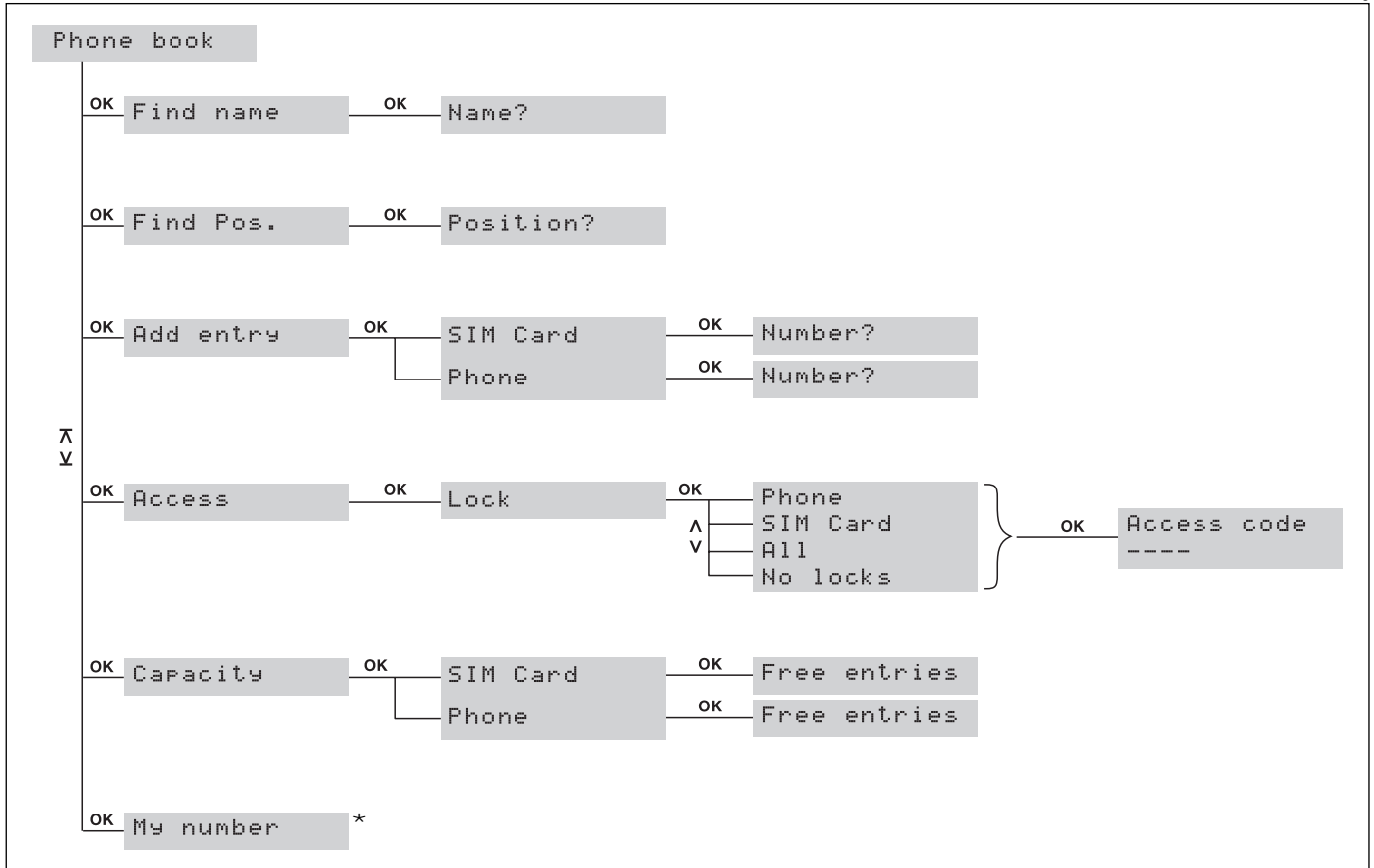


fig. 16 (*) This item can be displayed or not according to the type of SIM card used

Entering names/texts through the keypad (9-fig. 1)

You can use the keypad to enter names and texts in the different menus.

Entry is possible only when this function is requested on the display.

Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1) to store entry in the phone or in the SIM card.

Names can have a maximum of 16 characters, while texts can have a maximum of 160 characters.

Entry start

When the display shows “Name?” or “Enter text”: press key (9-fig. 1) for the first letter for the required number of times.

In case of new names, enter all the letters.

Letters/symbols

Example “O” = press key 6 thrice.

Each key selects different signs in sequence, after the last sign the first one is displayed again.

Each key is associated to the following characters:

1	_ (space)	.	!	?	'	“	()	%	&	1
2	A	B	C	Ä	à	2				
3	D	E	F	É	3					
4	G	H	I	ì	4					
5	J	K	L	5						
6	M	N	O	Ñ	ö	ò	6			
7	P	Q	R	S	ß	7				
8	T	U	V	ü	ù	8				
9	W	X	Y	Z	9					
0	+	-	X	*	/	=	<			
	>	#	0	@						

Capital/lower-case letters:

Keep the key of the selected letter pressed for more than 1 second.

All the following letters will be written accordingly.

Change again if required.

Shifting the entry field

When the letters are entered with different keys, the cursor automatically goes ahead.

When you enter letters with the same key, press > (7-fig. 1) to shift the cursor one step ahead.

To make corrections shift the entry field by pressing keys </>.

Entering symbols

Proceed as follows:

– use keys </> (7-fig. 1) to select the entry position. The symbol appears ahead the blinking cursor;

– Press the key corresponding to the symbol to be entered.

Deleting texts

You can delete both single characters or the whole text.

To delete a character:

- use keys </> (**7-fig. 1**) to select the character to be deleted (blinking);
- briefly press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

to delete the whole text:

- press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) for about 1 second.

Find entry by name

Find name

Record selection:

- use keys $\bar{\Delta}/\bar{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Find name**” and press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- enter the first three letters of the name you are looking for, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

A name starting with these three letters or the name in alphabet order with the related telephone number appears on the display.

Necessary condition: at least one storing place must be filled in.

Scroll the name list using keys $\bar{\Delta}/\bar{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**), until finding the required name (with the phone No.). Use keys </> to display all recorded data.

Automatic selection of a telephone number:

- press \curvearrowright (**11-fig. 1**).

Record changing/clearing/shifting/copying:

- Find the name/record as previously described;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**); the display will show “**Change?**”;
- select the required function with keys $\bar{\Delta}/\bar{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**), then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Change:

- it is possible to change the name and the telephone number one after the other.

Delete/confirm

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

Shift:

- records can be shifted to another position.

The arrow shows the present position.

- Use keys $\bar{\Delta}/\bar{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select a new position, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Copy:

Records can be copied, for instance from the SIM card into the phone memory.

The arrow shows the current position, e.g. 210.

- Use keys $\bar{\Delta}/\bar{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select a new position, e.g. 023, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Find entry by position

Find Pos.

It is possible to search for, change, clear, shift or copy a record in the phone book according to the storing number.

Record selection:

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Position?**” and press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**): the display will show “**Enter position**”;
- use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the storing number and press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

The storing number, the name entered and the telephone number appear on the display.

To select the telephone number automatically:

- press \curvearrowright (**11-fig. 1**).

Record changing, clearing, shifting or copying:

If required, follow the same procedure for “**Find entry by name**”.

Add entry

Add entry

It is possible to store up to 25 names and telephone numbers.

The number of possible records in the SIM card depends on the type of card.

If you want to add or change (overwrite) a record, press the following keys in sequence:

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Add entry**” and press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the entry place, e.g.:
 “SIM card 101-225” or “Phone 1-25”, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- enter the new number, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the new name, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- choose the storing place and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

If you do not choose the storing place, the new record will be stored in the next free storing place.

If the chosen storing place is not free, the display will show “**Overwrite?**”

Press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to overwrite (previous record entry will be deleted).

To add a new record press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Access lock

Access

This function protects the telephone memory against use by unauthorised persons.

Use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Access**” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to choose one of the following options:

“Phone”

It is not possible to recall telephone numbers stored in the system memory.

“SIM Card”

It is not possible to recall telephone numbers stored in the SIM card.

“All”

It is not possible to recall phone numbers stored both in the SIM card and in the system memory; it is not possible to store new phone numbers.

“No locks”

To unlock the phone and the SIM card.

For each selected function:

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– enter the access code and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

– select or remove the numbers with the keys \langle/\rangle , then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Capacity check

Capacity

With this function it is possible to check how many free places are left in the SIM card and in the phone memory.

Proceed as follows:

– use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Capacity**” and press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

– use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**SIM Card**” or “**Phone**” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

At “**Free entries**” the number of free places is displayed.

If all places are full, “**PLMN names full memory**” is displayed.

Display own number

My number

You can view your own phone number (provided it has been stored):

– Use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**My number**” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

If you have more than one number, select one with $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$.

PROGRAMMABLE FUNCTIONS

Telephone settings can be changed as required using the functions activated by the **MENU/OK (13-fig. 1)** key.

Default settings are performed by the phone Manufacturer.

Changing settings

To change default settings, proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**: to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu (**fig. 19**);
- use key **∟ (7-fig. 1)** to select “**Setup**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **</> (7-fig.1)** to change the required setting;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

Choosing the required setting

To select the required default setting, proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**: to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu (**fig. 19**);
- use key **∟ (7-fig. 1)** to select “**Setup**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **∩/∟ (7-fig. 1)** to select the required setting;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

SETUP MENU ACTIVATION

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu (**fig. 19**);
- the cursor **▶** will move to “**Setup**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to quit this menu and go back to “DSC-Telephone” menu.

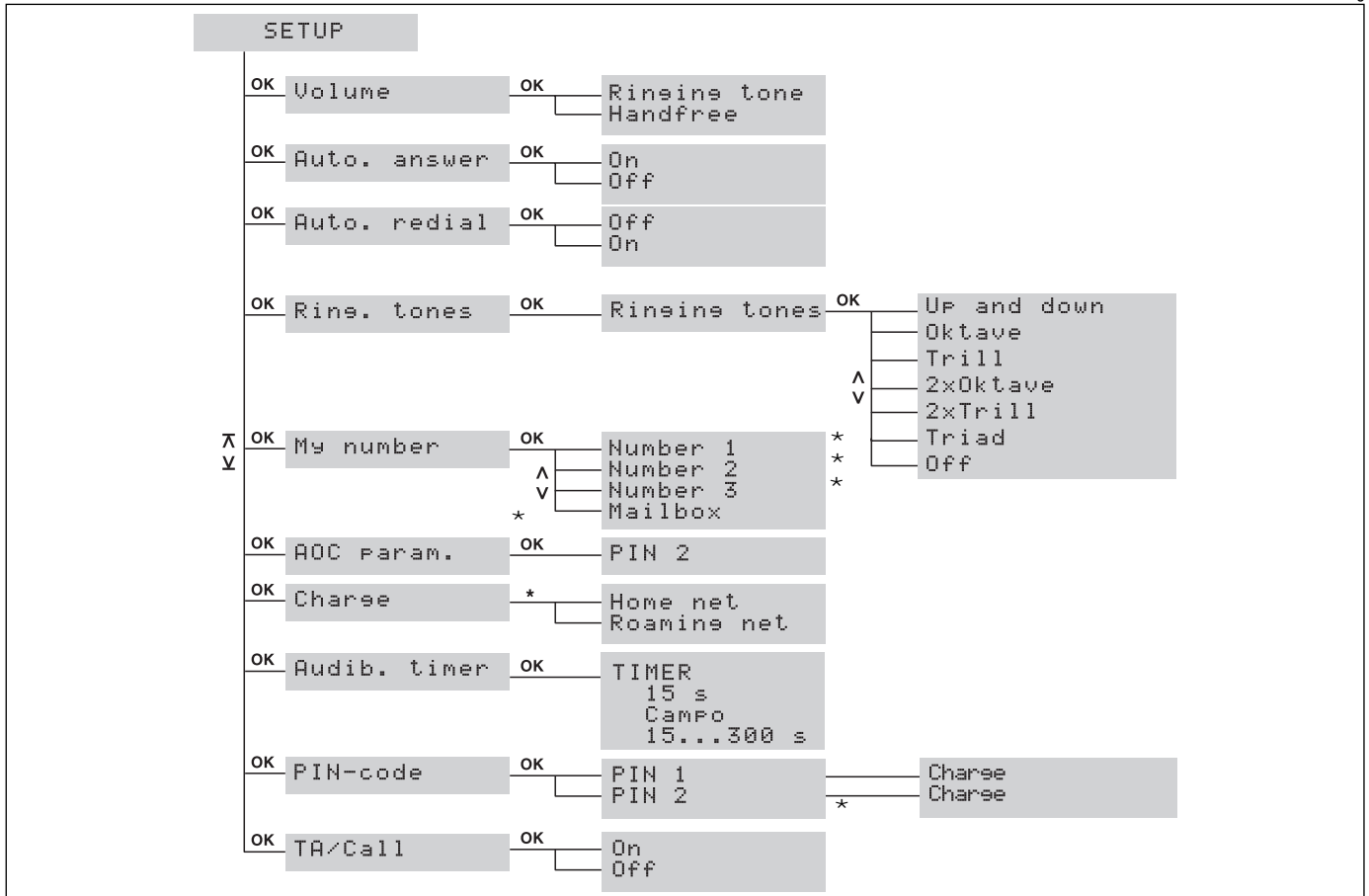


fig. 17

(*) This item can be displayed or not according to the type of SIM card used

Call volume adjustment

Volume

During a telephone call the volume of the call tone, the speaker or the receiver, if any, can be adjusted by turning the knob (**7-fig. 1**). Turn the knob anticlockwise to decrease the volume and clockwise to increase it.

The ringer volume can be adjusted through the proper function of the Setup menu.

Use the key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) to move the cursor to:

- **Ringing tone**
- **Handfree.**

Ringing tone

The ringing tone can be adjusted between **0** and **9** (**0** = muted) using keys \langle / \rangle .

In case of automatic call acceptance the ringing tone cannot be set to **0**.

The call tone volume cannot be set to “**0**”.

Handfree

The speaker volume can be adjusted between **0** and **63** using keys \langle / \rangle .

Handset volume

This option is only displayed if the phone is fitted with handset.

The receiver volume can be adjusted between **1** and **8** using keys \langle / \rangle ; to adjust the volume detach the handset.

Automatic answer

Auto. answer

The call can be accepted automatically if this menu option is set to “**On**”.

The call is answered in handfree mode.

- Off** – automatic answer off
- On** – automatic answer on.

Automatic redialling

Auto. redial

If this menu option is set to “**On**”, automatic redialling will start when the line is busy.

To stop redialling press \curvearrowright (**11-fig. 1**).

- Off** - Auto. redial off
- On** - Auto. redial on.

The number of redials depends on the network used.

“Ringing tone”

Ringsine tone

Use keys \nearrow/\searrow to choose the required ringing tone:

- Up and down
- Oktave
- Trill
- 2 x Oktave
- 2 x Trill
- Triad
- Off

“**Off**” corresponds to “**0** call tone volume”.

The set signal is repeated.

Entering own phone number/ mailbox number

My number

This function shall be used to enter a maximum of three telephone numbers and the mailbox number as a memory aid.

The mailbox number is required for direct selection with the call menu.

After pressing **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** the display will show “**My number**”.

Use keys \nearrow/\searrow to select the storing position of the phone number.

Press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**, enter the phone number and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** again. The display will show “**Stored number**”.

Use keys \nearrow/\searrow to select the next position and so on.

AOC parameters (Advice Of Charge)

AOC Param.

This function depends on type of SIM card and the call charge is established by the network provider.

With this function it is possible to set charge costs and a credit. As soon as the set credit is finished, it is necessary to set a new credit to continue to use the telephone.

When the network provider does not provide the AOC function, input frequency is set to one minute. Calculation is based on the set value. At this point the credit function is off.

When this menu item is selected after pressing **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** the PIN2 code or the 4-digit access code is requested.

After entering the code, it is possible to set a unit cost and a credit.

If the unit cost and the credit are already set, the last character starts blinking on the display.

Use the keypad to (**9-fig. 1**) change the amount and the currency.

Apply the following procedure:

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) to quit this menu and store change on the SIM card.

NOTE If you set “**0.00**” as a credit, the credit function is deactivated.

Calling cost setting

Charge

If it is not possible to use the AOC function, you can use an internal counter. For instance, you can set costs per minute as follows:

- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- enter the access code;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Home net**” or “**Roaming net**”, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- use the keypad (**9-fig. 1**) to enter costs and credit;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm.

WARNING Since costs may vary according to different parameters (network, type of agreement, hour, etc.) calling cost indication is approximate.

Audible timer

Audib. timer

This function shall be used to hear a beep at fixed intervals during a call; this is therefore very useful to check call costs.

Beep intervals could range from 15 to 300 seconds. Proceed as follows:

- with phone on, press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- select “**Setup**” in the “DSC-Telephone” menu;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;
- use key $\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**), to select “**Audib. timer.**”;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– after “**Timer**” the set interval in seconds is shown;

– use key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**), to select “**Off**” or “**Timer**” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

Select “**Off**” to go back to the “Setup” menu.

Select “**Timer**” to set the beep intervals.

PIN code


PIN-code

This function shall be used to activate/deactivate/change the PIN code.

Activating/deactivating the PIN code request

If the SIM card adopted enables this function, the PIN code request can be activated/deactivated.

Proceed as follows:

– press  (**11-fig. 1**);

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu (**fig. 19**);

– select “**Setup**”, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– use key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**PIN code**”

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– use keys $\overline{\sphericalangle}$ / \sphericalangle to select the PIN code to be activated/deactivated (usually PIN1);

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;

– use keys \langle/\rangle (**7-fig.1**) to select the required setting (**On** or **Off**);

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

To confirm setting, enter the PIN code as follows:

– use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the PIN code starting from the first digit;

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to go to the **PIN 1** menu;

– press repeatedly **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) to go back to the main menu or keep it pressed for over 1 second to go back to the “DSC-Telephone” menu.

Changing the PIN code

Proceed as follows:

- recall the **PIN 1** menu as described previously;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**), to select “**Change**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- use keys (**9-fig. 1**) to enter the **new** PIN code, starting from the first digit;
- enter the new PIN code again to confirm;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press repeatedly **CLR (15-fig. 1)** until the main menu is displayed.

TA during a call

TA/Call

This function shall be used to receive Traffic Announcement (TA) during a call.

After pressing **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** the display will show the set state.

Off - TA off during a telephone call

On - TA on during a telephone call

Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required setting.

Press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

Press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to go back to the previous menu.

Press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** as required, or keep it pressed for over 1 second to go back to the “DSC-Telephone” menu.

CALL MENU ACTIVATION

Proceed as follows:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to display the “DSC-Telephone” menu (**fig. 15**);
- use key $\overline{\vee}$ to move the cursor \blacktriangleright to “**Menu**”;
- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm;
- press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to quit the menu and go back to the “DSC-Telephone” menu.

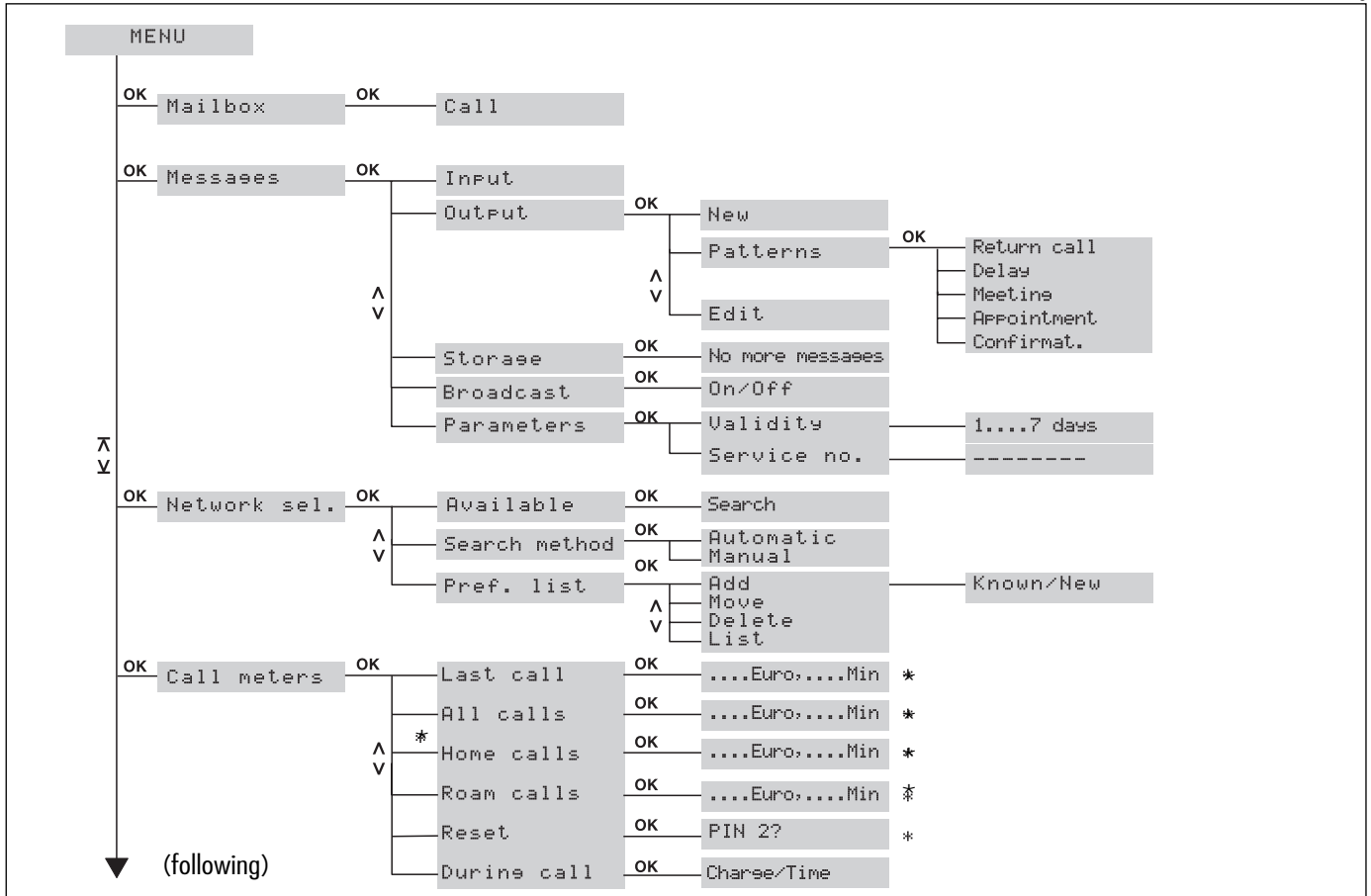


fig. 18

(*) This item can be displayed or not according to the SIM card used

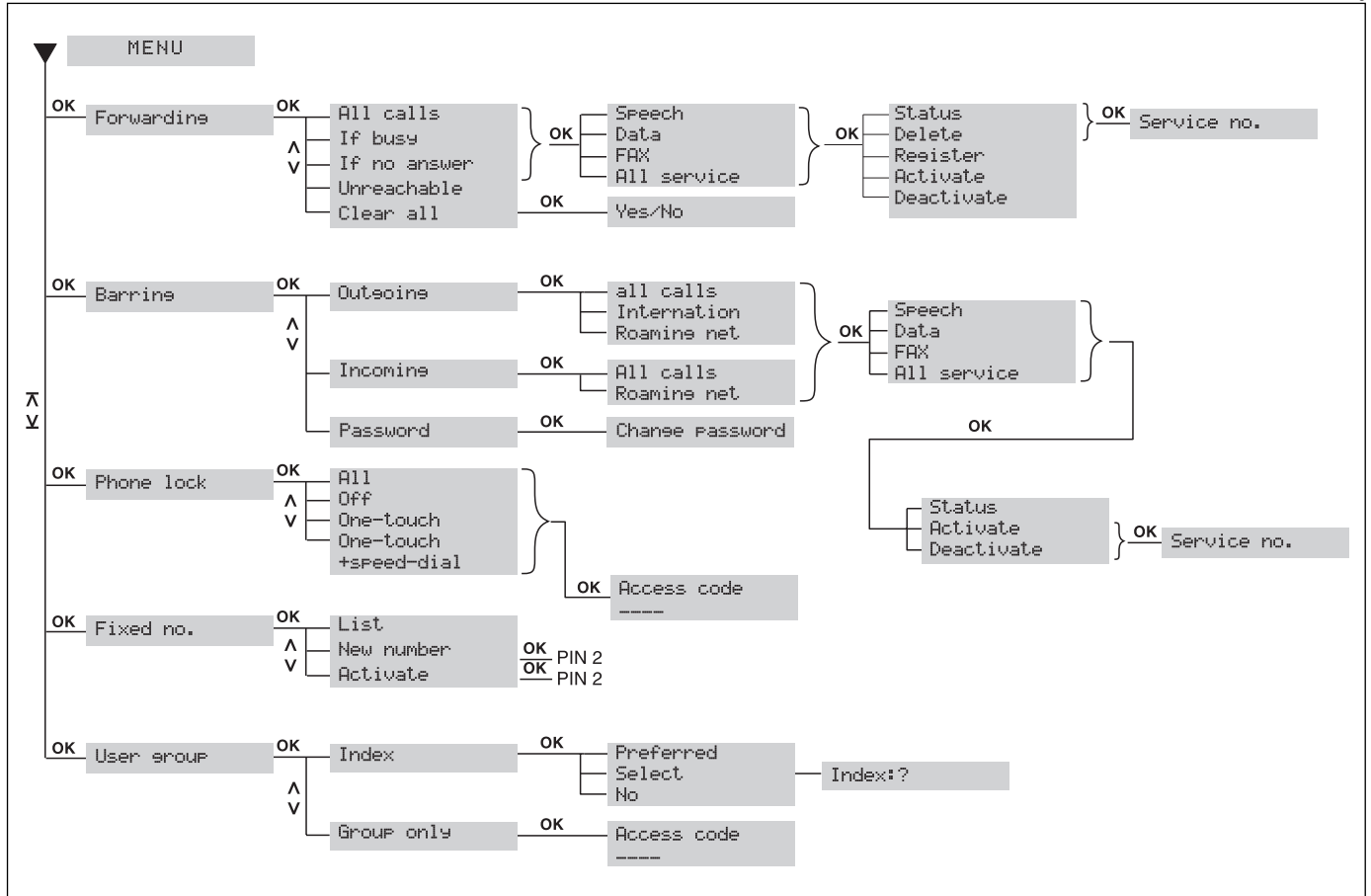


fig. 19

Mailbox

Mailbox

The mailbox function provided by the system is used to record voice messages and can be compared to a common phone answering system.


To make the mailbox work it is necessary to have the call forwarded to the mailbox number. If no number is stored, when the mailbox function is activated you will be invited to enter a telephone number.

To listen to mailbox messages, select **“Call”** and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Messages


Messages

With the SMS (Short Message Service) it is possible to send or receive single written information, max. 160 characters long.

New messages are displayed with the symbol . A new message received is signalled with a sound warning.

“Input”

With **“Input”** it is possible to read and manage received messages.

When a message is received, the telephone tries to store it in the SIM card. When the card memory is full, the symbol  is lit on the display and you must delete one or more messages in order to receive other messages.

Selecting a message

Proceed as follows:

— select **“Input”** and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**: the display will show the number of **“New”** and **“Old”** messages;

“Old” means that the message has been read and stored:

- press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;
- use keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required message.

The letter **“N”** on the first line first place shows that it is a new message.

When the first place is empty, it means that there is a read and stored message.

Single messages are ordered according to their reception date and time. On the second line the sender's number or name are displayed.

Reading a message


After pressing **SMS (5-fig. 1)**, the message can be displayed using keys $\overline{\Delta}/\overline{\nabla}$ (**7-fig. 1**).

Deleting/storing a message

To delete a message:

- press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to delete or store the selected message;
- select the required option and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Calling the sender or another phone number

To call the SMS message sender press  (**11-fig. 1**) when the message is displayed.

Call is automatic. If the message displays a telephone number into “inverted commas”, connection is made to this number. If different telephone numbers are displayed, connection is made to the first number.

“Output”Sending a message

With this option you can send messages to other users and set related parameters.

Proceed as follows:

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Output**” and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**New**” and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Now you can enter your messages (max. 160 characters). Refer to point “Entering names/texts through the keypad” in paragraph “Phone book menu”;

- after completing the message press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;
- enter the addressee telephone number and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ to select whether to send, to store or to send and to store the message.

Patterns

With this function it is possible to use pre-set messages. Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the following options:

- **Return call**
- **Delay**
- **Meeting**
- **Appointment**
- **Validity**

Select the required option, press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** and a preset text string concerning the selected option will be displayed.

“Storage”

To display received and stored messages, select **“Storage”** using keys \wedge/\surd (**7-fig. 1**) and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**). Received messages are displayed with date, time and sender’s number.

To call the message sender, press \curvearrowright (**11-fig. 1**).

After reading the message press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

“Broadcast”

Broadcast is a service for short text messages sent through numbered channels.

Channels broadcast messages of different types.

For further information contact you network provider to obtain the list of available channels.

Selecting Broadcast **“On”**, after pressing **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) the channel number sending information must be entered.

“Parameters”

– Use keys \wedge/\surd (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required function, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Validity:

Now you can establish for how long the network provider should be trying to send a message. The standard value is 1 day, but you can use the keypad to (**9-fig. 1**) select a validity ranging from 0 to 7.

After setting

– press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Service no.:

The message is sent to the network provider service number and then to the addressee. In order to know the service number, contact the network provider and then store it there.

Network sel.

```
Network sel.
```

In areas with different radiotelephone networks you can choose a particular network.

Proceed as follows:

– use keys \wedge/\surd (**7-fig. 1**) to select **“Network sel.”**, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

– use keys \wedge/\surd (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required options, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

“Available networks”

Select **“Available”**: the display will show **“Search”** and after a while the available networks will be displayed.

The first lines displays the position number, * and the network provider’s code. The second line displays the network provider’s name.

* means that with this network calls can be made with the current SIM card.

Use keys $\overleftarrow{\wedge}/\overleftarrow{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select other networks and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm. The display will show “Insert now?”. Stop with **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) and confirm with **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

“Search method”

Search can be automatic or manual (Network selection). Select “Search method” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm. Use keys $\overleftarrow{\wedge}/\overleftarrow{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “Automatic” or “Manual”.

Automatic search:

The local network always has the priority. If you are in an area where your local network is not available, connection is automatically made to the next available network. Network selection is based on your preset priorities in the network list.

Manual search:

With the manual search you choose the network.

The current status is shown by the arrow.

Change with \langle/\rangle , confirm with **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

The antenna symbol shows the network the system is connected to.

- Connection to a local network.
- Connection to a foreign network.

When the antenna symbol is blinking, there is only connection to a network without access right. Therefore, it is possible to make only the emergency call.

“Network list processing”

With this option it is possible to change the priority list of favourite network providers.

Select “Pref. list” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm.

– Use keys $\overleftarrow{\wedge}/\overleftarrow{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the different options and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Add a network:

– Known networks

Choose the required network in the network provider list and give the required priority.

– New network

You can enter a new network provider in the priority list (you need the network code of the network provider).

Deleting/moving networks from/to the list:

Record processing in the network priority list.

Proceed as follows:

- use keys $\overleftarrow{\wedge}/\overleftarrow{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm;
- enter the access code and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Network list display:

Use keys $\overleftarrow{\wedge}/\overleftarrow{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to display the priority list.

Then, press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

Call meters

Call meters

The telephone is fitted with a counter for costs, call duration and number of calls.

The phone is set by the manufacturer to the call duration display.

Proceed as follows:

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Call meters**”, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**):

Last call

- Last call duration or cost.

All calls

- Duration or cost amount of all calls.

Home calls (function depending on the SIM card)

- Duration or cost amount of all home calls

Roam calls (function depending on the SIM card)

- Duration or cost of all calls to foreign countries.

WARNING When the SIM card is suitable for AOC, “**Home calls**” and “**Roam calls**” options are not present.

Reset

- The counter for call duration and costs is reset.

Connected

- To display or not the duration and cost of the call in progress. Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to confirm.

Call forwarding

Forwarding

In certain conditions it is possible to forward an incoming call to another telephone number. Set the forwarding way with the menu.

- Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Forwarding**” and then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

- Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**).

All calls

- Every call is forwarded.

If busy

- The call is forwarded when another call is already in progress.

If no answer

- The call is forwarded when you do not accept it.

Unreachable

- The call is forwarded when the telephone is off or when you are in an area not covered by the GSM network.

Clear all

— Call forwarding is cleared completely.

Use key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) to choose whether forwarding shall stand valid just for calls, data request, faxes or for all the described services.

Request for call forwarding state

Follow the above mentioned procedure and then select “**State**”; the call forwarding state of the selected service is displayed.

Clearing a single call forwarding

Apply the above mentioned procedure, then select “**Clear all**” and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**. The single call forwarding will be cleared.

Call forwarding recording

Apply the above mentioned procedure, then select “**Register**” and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**. Enter the complete forwarding number with keys (**9-fig. 1**); press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** again.

Forwarding activation

Apply the above mentioned procedure, then select “**Activate**” and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**. You will go back to the “Forwarding” menu.

Forwarding deactivation

Apply the above mentioned procedure, then select “**Deactivate**” and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Barring

Barrine

In certain conditions it is possible to lock incoming/outgoing calls or send them to another telephone number. Set forwarding with the menu.

— Use keys $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Barring**” and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

— Use keys $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Outgoing**”, “**Incoming**” and “**Password**”, then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Barring outgoing calls:

— Use keys \wedge/\vee (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

All calls

— You cannot make telephone calls.

The emergency call is still possible.

Internation

– Only internal connections are possible.

Roaming net

– Only internal connections are possible.

If you are abroad it is possible to call your country.

Use key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) to choose whether barring shall be valid just for calls, data request, faxes or for all the described services.

Press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** and select “**Activate**”; enter the password (given by your Provider) using keys (**9-fig. 1**), then press again **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Barring incoming calls:

– Use keys $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select the required option and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

All calls

– Basically, no call can be received.

Roaming net

– If you are abroad you cannot receive telephone calls.

Use key \sphericalangle (**7-fig. 1**) to choose whether barring shall be valid just for calls, data request, faxes or for all the described services.

Press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** and select “**Activate**”; enter the password (given by your Provider) using keys (**9-fig. 1**), then press again **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Password

The barring password can be changed as follows: enter the old password using keys (**9-fig. 1**) and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**; enter the new password and press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** again to confirm.

Phone lock

Phone lock

You can protect the telephone so that it cannot be used by non-authorised people. Proceed as follows:

– use keys $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Phone lock**” and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Use keys $\sphericalangle/\sphericalangle$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select one of the following options:

All calls

– No call is possible apart from the emergency call.

Off

– Locks off.

One-touch

– It is possible to select only the numbers stored between 1 and 9, both in the phone and in the SIM card memory.

One-touch + speed-dial

— It is possible to select all stored numbers (both in the phone and in the SIM card).

Press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

Enter the access code and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Fixed no.

Fixed no.

This option is displayed only if the SIM card enables this function.

You can limit the telephone use to certain telephone numbers (fixed telephone numbers). These numbers can be stored in the SIM card.

Proceed as follows:

— use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**Fixed no.**” and then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;

— use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select one of the following options:

List

— The list of stored fixed numbers is displayed.

New number

— A new fixed number can be added.

Activate

— On/Off function.

User group

User group

This is a special function which can be installed by your network provider.

With this function the telephone use can be limited to direct calls to a given user group.

WARNING Do not change any setting if the function is not activated by the network provider. Operating faults may arise.

Use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to select “**User group**”, then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

Use key $\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) if you want to call only a given group or a group with a pre-set code, then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

If required, enter the group access code using keys (**9-fig. 1**), then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**.

TARGASYS SERVICES

The Connect system provides a set of functions enabling to receive, from the **Targasys** contact centre, useful information (e.g. hotel, closest workshop) or to send a request for assistance.

With all these functions your geographical position is automatically given to the assistance centre. The necessary condition to establish your exact position is reception of at least 3 GPS satellites. The number of received satellites is shown on the display.

Furthermore, with the “**Follow up**” function you can be updated on the traffic situation along your way.

The necessary conditions to use Connect telematic services are the following:

- valid SIM card for **Targasys** Contact Centre connection
- activation of pay services managed by **Targasys** (Infomobility, Medical Adv., Road assist.).

WARNING If the user has not yet subscribed to the pay services run by **Targasys**, the associated menu functions are inactive. During subscription you will be given the activation and deactivation procedures of the Telematic Services offered by **Targasys**.

WARNING Access to **Targasys** Telematic services is linked to the terminal activation and to the telephone operator profile activation of the SIM card inserted in the system. If a SIM card and a telephone operator with no profile activated are used, it is necessary to request **Targasys** for a new activation. Connect can manage 5 different profiles.

When no SIM card has been inserted and you press **☎** (**6-fig. 1**) it will possible to call the emergency service number 112. Instead, if a valid SIM card is inserted, but there is no **Targasys** subscription, pressing **☎** (**6-fig. 1**) will activate the “Pers. Number” function.

WARNING “112” is the emergency call service for all countries in which this public service is available. The “Emergency 112” call can always be activated, even if the telephone card is not inserted in the slot. The “Emergency 112” call can be made at any moment also with the telephone. The activation of calls for assistance is subordinate to whether the cell phone is working and correctly supplied electrically. Therefore in the event of accidents or damage to the car it might not be available. Moreover, you must be in a place covered by the GSM 900 network and there should be enough field signal intensity.

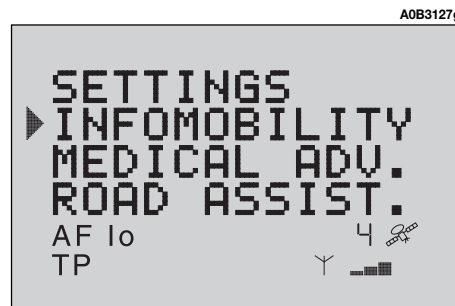


fig. 20

WARNING Make “112” emergency calls only when there is a real emergency. Emergency call misuse is liable to punishment.

After service activation, pressing **C** (6-fig. 1) will display the main **Targasys** menu with the following options (fig. 20):

- **Settings**
- **Infomobility**
- **Medical adv.**
- **Road assist.**

SETTINGS MENU ACTIVATION

The “**Connect**” mode “**Settings**” menu shall be used to set the system as required.

With cursor to “**Settings**”, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to display the options shown in (fig. 21).

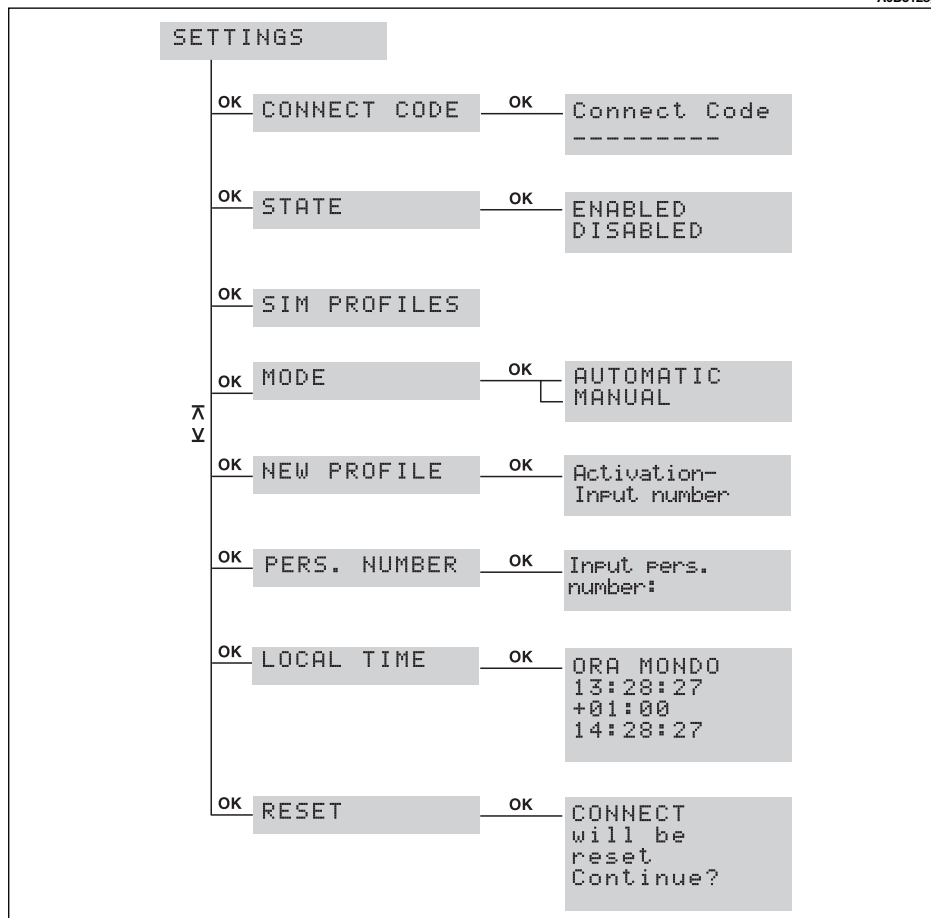


fig. 21

CONNECT ACTIVATION

When the system is switched on for the first time and you want to use Telematic services, request activation to the **Targasys** service centre.

The following data must be at reach:

- the system serial number (see next paragraph “Recalling the Connect code”);
- The SIM card telephone number that you want to use for **Targasys** services.

WARNING Carry out this procedure when phone field is present.

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the main **Targasys** services menu;
- since the system is not on yet and no SIM card profile has been entered, the request to call the “Personal Number” or the public service “112” is displayed; press **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to access the Telematic Services menu;

- in the **Targasys** menu, use key **↶** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Settings**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys **↶/↷** (7-fig. 1) to select “**New profile**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show the request to enter the **Targasys** centre number (supplied at car purchase) using keys (9-fig. 1);

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1), you will be asked whether you want to be connected to the entered number, then press again **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- once connected to the **Targasys** service centre, follow the operator’s instructions (who will ask you the Connect code number and the SIM card telephone number);

- after a couple of seconds “**Infomobility**”, “**Medical adv.**” and “**Road assist.**” menus will be enabled; this means that the activation of the **Targasys** services for Connect has been completed successfully.

If the **Targasys** centre number has already been stored, when “**New profile**” is selected, the stored number is displayed; to change it:

– press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1), then enter the new number using the alphanumeric keys (9-fig. 1);

– you will be asked whether you want to be connected to the entered number, then press again **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to start connection or press **CLR** (15-fig. 1) if you do not want to change the stored number;

– the request to be connected to the old stored number will be displayed; press **OK** (13-fig. 1) to confirm.

Recalling the “Connect code”

During the Connect activation process the system code number is requested. To display it, apply the following procedure:

– press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

– use key **↖** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Settings**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

– use keys **↖/↙** (7-fig. 1) to select “**Connect Code**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

– the system code number is displayed;

– press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to quit and go back to the “**Settings**” menu.

Recalling the function related to the system “state”

In order to know if your terminal can access **Targasys** services apply the following procedure:

– press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

– use key **↖** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Settings**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

– use keys **↖/↙** (7-fig. 1) to select “**State**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

– the system state is displayed:

ENABLED: terminal enabled to access **Targasys** services

DISABLED: terminal not enabled to access **Targasys** services.

– press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to quit and go back to “**Settings**” menu.

Recalling the function related to existing SIM profile display

It is possible to display SIM profiles stored in the system and related card numbers. Proceed as follows:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- use key **↔** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Settings**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys **↖/↘** (7-fig. 1) to select “**SIM Profiles**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- stored SIM profiles are displayed. The currently active profile is indicated by the cursor **▶**.

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to quit and go back to the “**Settings**” menu.

WARNING Profile activation is valid not only for the SIM card used to make that operation, but also for all SIM cards belonging to the same GSM operator. Therefore, if you have more than one SIM card issued by the same operator, there is no need to repeat the profile activation procedure.

“PERSONAL NUMBER” function

“Pers. Number” refers to the number used by the system when key **C** (6-fig. 1) is pressed in the following conditions:

- SIM card properly inserted

- **Targasys** services disabled or no profile corresponding to the SIM card

When no personal number has been entered, an error indication is displayed.

To set the personal number apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- use key **↔** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Settings**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1) to select “**Pers. Number**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show “**Input pers. Number:**”;

- enter the personal number using keys (9-fig. 1), then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

When a personal number has already been stored, it is shown on the display. To change the personal number press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1), enter the new number using keys (9-fig. 1) and then press again **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1).

Press **CLR** (15-fig. 1) if you do not want to change the stored personal number.

After entering or changing the personal number, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to go back to the “**Settings**” menu.

“LOCAL TIME” function

The system receives the Greenwich Mean Time as a result of the GPS. To adjust the time displayed during message reception and to adapt it to local time (in the country where you are), you must select “offset”, i.e. a value modification compared to the reference time.

For instance, if you are in Italy you must set the following values:

- +1 hour compared to the reference time (with the solar time):

- +2 hours compared to the reference time (with the summer time).

To make these modifications apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display **Targasys** services menu;

- use key $\overline{\wedge}$ (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor \blacktriangleright to “**Settings**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\underline{\vee}$ (7-fig. 1) to select “**Local Time**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the Greenwich Mean Time is displayed and the cursor stops \blacktriangleright next to the different value;

- to change the offset value, enter the new value using keys \langle/\rangle (7-fig. 1), then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- if the offset value is correct and is not to be changed, press **CLR** (15-fig. 1).

After entering or changing the offset value, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to go back to the “**Settings**” menu.

“RESET” function

If the car changes owner, it is necessary to delete all the system information and to restore the manufacturer’s default parameters.

WARNING When activating the “Reset” function all SIM profiles, the system activation and any received telematic messages are cleared.

Proceed as follows:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- use key **↔** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “Settings”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys **↖/↘** (7-fig. 1) to select “Reset” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show “CONNECT will be reset. Continue?”

- to start resetting press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1), otherwise press **CLR** (15-fig. 1);

- at the end of the “reset” operation the display shows “CONNECT was reset”.

Pressing **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) or **CLR** (15-fig. 1), to reset the system or not, will bring back to the “Settings” menu.

It is also possible to reset the system making use of the **Targasys** service. In this case all SIM profiles and the system activation are cleared, while received Infomobility messages can be cleared manually on the terminal.

To reset the system according to the last method mentioned, you need to contact and inform the **Targasys** service centre that you wish to reset the system.

CONNECT USE

Once the system and the related SIM card have been activated by the **Targasys** service centre, according to the above mentioned procedures, you can use every Connect telematic function.

“MEDICAL ADVICE” SERVICE

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

The “Medical adv.” function implemented on this Connect forwards your request directly to the **Targasys** service centre and not to the nearest emergency centre (by the “Emergency 112” call) as it is done usually. In this way the message calling for medical assistance is forwarded to the **Targasys** operator completed with the position of the car to allow it to be located and therefore the required actions will be immediately started.

This function is particularly useful to locate the car position when you are not able to identify it exactly.

WARNING In order to have your position sent correctly you must receive at least 3 GPS satellites. The number of received satellites can be read on the display next to the satellite symbol. Should signal reception be not strong enough at request activation, the system will send the last detected position.

WARNING Use the “**Medical adv.**” function only in case of emergency. In other situations (e.g. road assistance) use the specific function.

On the basis of system and SIM card conditions when forwarding the request for “**Medical adv.**”, the following may occur:

– **Targasys** services disabled or SIM card not recognized: emergency call will be sent to the international emergency number “112”.

– **Targasys** services enabled and SIM card not recorded: emergency call will be sent to the personal number stored according to the procedure previously described in paragraph “Personal Number function”.

WARNING The “**Emergency 112**” call can be made at any moment also with the telephone. “112” is the emergency call service for all countries in which this public service is available. The “Emergency 112” call can always be activated, even if the telephone card is not inserted in the slot (**17-fig. 1**). The activation of calls for assistance is subordinate to whether the cell phone is working and correctly supplied electrically. Therefore in the event of accidents or damage car it might not be available. Moreover, you must be in a place covered by the GSM 900 network and there should be enough field signal intensity.

WARNING Make “112” emergency calls only when there is a real emergency. Emergency call misuse is liable to punishment.

According to the selected setting (see next paragraph), this function can be activated with the following procedures:

Manual activation

To start the “**Medical adv.**” function proceed as follows:

– press **☎** (**6-fig. 1**) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

– use key **↔** (**7-fig. 1**) to move the cursor **▶** to “Medical Adv.”, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

– the display will show: “**Start a Medical advice request?**”;

– to start medical assistance request press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) and you will be connected to the Targasys service centre, otherwise press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

Automatic activation

If automatic request for medical advice is activated with the **“Settings”** function described hereafter, the message can be sent by merely pressing key **☎** (**6-fig. 1**), without selecting the proper function.

To prevent accidental calls, when the automatic medical advice is on, the user has about 20 seconds to interrupt the call after pressing the key.

If the automatic mode is on, apply the following procedure to start the **“Medical adv.”** function:

- press **☎** (**6-fig. 1**)
- the display will show: **“After 20 sec medical request will start”**;

- the remaining time is shown on the display and when it expires the request will be automatically forwarded to the **Targasys** services centre;

- to interrupt press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** before time expires.

When the request for **“Medical adv.”**, is forwarded, an SMS is sent to the **Targasys** services centre. The service centre will call you back as soon as possible; the following message will be displayed: **“Request successful! You will be called back”**.

Selecting the “Medical Advice” forwarding mode

To select how to send the request for **“Medical adv.”** proceed as follows:

- press **☎** (**6-fig. 1**) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- if selected mode is ‘automatic’ press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** before time expires to stop forwarding and to display the **Targasys** services menu

- use key **↔** (**7-fig. 1**) to move the cursor **▶** to **“Settings”**, then press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)**;

- use keys **↖/↘** (**7-fig. 1**) to select **“Mode”** and then press **OK (13-fig. 1)**;

- use keys **↖/↘** (**7-fig. 1**) to select **“Automatic”** or **“Manual”**;

- press **OK/MENU(13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

“ROAD ASSISTANCE” SERVICE

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

Selecting and activating this function, a message calling for road assistance is sent to the **Targasys** services centre, completed with the position of the car to allow it to be located.

To forward the request for roadside assistance apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;
- use key **↖** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to “**Road assist.**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);
- the display will show the following message: “**Start a Roadside Assistance request?**”
- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm.

When the request for “**Road assist.**” is forwarded, an SMS is sent to the **Targasys** services centre. The service centre will call you back as soon as possible. The following message is displayed: “**Request successful! You will be called back**”.

Calls for medical advice or road assistance

For both **Road assist.** and **Medical adv.** functions, if transmission of the telematic call is not successful, a warning message appears on the display asking the user if he/she wants to call the **Targasys** (*) centre anyway to communicate the need for assistance (call will be forwarded only if that area is covered by the GSM 900 network) (**).

(*) In this case the operating centre will no longer be able to locate the car.

(**) The call will be made using a tollfree number. In particular situations the Customer might be charged with the call according to the type of telephone operator used or the roaming conditions.

INFOMOBILITY SERVICES

Press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu, cursor **▶** will move to “**Infomobility**”. Press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm.

A list of pay services and information will be displayed (e.g. the closest hotel, restaurant, etc..). The **Targasys** operator will send a message with the requested information and, if needed, he/she will send a message with route indications to reach destination.

Available functions are:

- **Connect**
- **Follow up**
- **Message list.**

These pay services run by **Targasys** are available only upon subscription. If the user has not yet subscribed to them or subscription has expired, the associated functions will be disabled and the display will show the following message “**Option not implemented**”.

The user can call the **Targasys** operator by phone to have information regarding his/her subscription and reactivate the service, if required.

If subscription has expired, it is still possible to consult stored information.

“**Infomobility**” functions are shown in **fig. 22**.

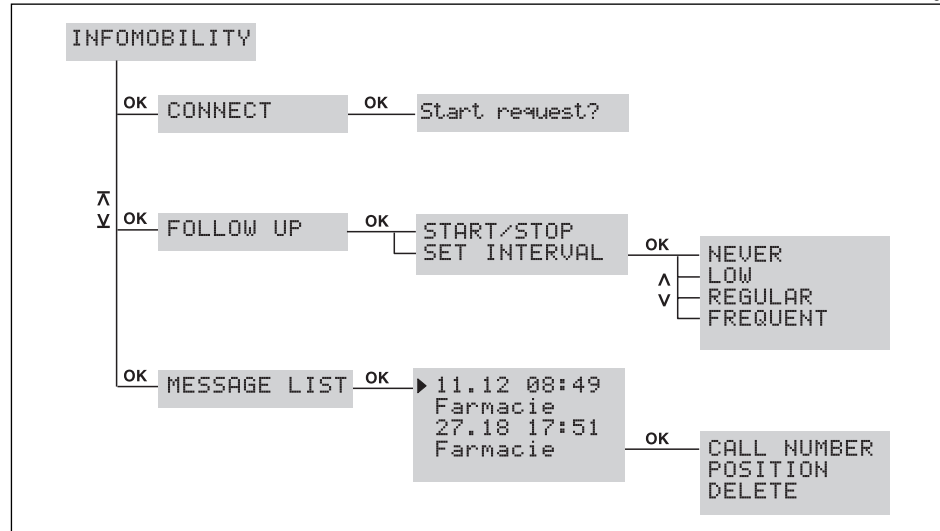


fig. 22

“CONNECT” FUNCTION

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

To send a request for information to **Targasys** apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- in the menu the cursor **▶** is set to “**Infomobility**”. Press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- a new menu will be displayed with the cursor **▶** set to “**Connect**”. Press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show the following message: “**Start request?**”, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm;

- the following messages will then be displayed in sequence “**Service started**” and then “**Request successful! You will be called back**”.

When request is received, **Targasys** will call the user which could now ask the operator the required information.

“FOLLOW UP” FUNCTION

The “**Follow up**” function is used to receive traffic information and to be updated by the **Targasys** centre on any queue along your route. It is also possible to select the traffic update frequency and to automatically inform the Contact Center on the distance covered, in order to select relevant traffic information.

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

To activate the “**Follow up**” function apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services centre;

- in the menu the cursor **▶** is set to “**Infomobility**”; then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use key \surd (7-fig. 1) to select “**Follow up**”, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show “**Start**” or “**Stop**” according to previous activation or deactivation; press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- a message saying to forward the request is displayed; press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to continue;

- the display will then show: “**Service started**” and “**Request successful! You will be called back**”. When the request is received, **Targasys** will call the user.

To deactivate the “**Follow up**” function apply the following procedure:

- press C (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- in the menu the cursor \blacktriangleright is set to “**Infomobility**”; then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use key \surd (7-fig. 1) to select “**Follow up**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- select “**Stop**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- the request to end that function will be displayed; press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to continue;

- the display will show “**Service stopped**”

WARNING When turning the system on, if the “**Follow up**” function is enabled, press C (6-fig. 1) and the request to end the service appears automatically.

Setting the interval for updating the distance covered

If you want to set the frequency of messages sent to the contact centre on the distance covered, while the “**Follow up**” function is on, proceed as follows:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys** services menu;

- in the menu the cursor ► is set to “**Infomobility**”; then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use key **∟** (7-fig. 1) to select “**Follow up**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use key **∟** (7-fig. 1) to select “**Set interval**” and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use keys **∟/∟** (7-fig. 1) to select one of the following settings (referred to the interval for sending the car position):

NEVER: the car position will never be forwarded;

LOW: the car position will be updated every 130 Km;

REGULAR: the car position will be updated every 70 Km;

FREQUENT: the car position will be updated every 35 Km;

- select the required setting and then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1).

Displaying/deleting received information

When a **Targasys** operator message is received, the display will show: “**New message! Read it?**”

If you want to read it immediately, press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1); if you want to read it later, press **CLR** (15-fig. 1); the message will be stored.

All messages will be stored (up to a maximum of 20) until they are cleared. Moreover, if the message contains a telephone number (e.g. hotel), it is possible to call it directly. If the message contains information for locating a destination, the straight line distance and direction are given.

WARNING All **Targasys** messages containing service information are just displayed and not stored.

RECALLING STORED MESSAGES

To display stored messages apply the following procedure:

- press **C** (6-fig. 1) to display the **Targasys**services menu;

- in the menu the cursor **▶** is set to **"In-fomobility"**; press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- use key **∨** (7-fig. 1) to select **"Message list"**, then press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1);

- stored messages will be displayed in the following way:

the upper line: will show message reception date and time;

the lower line: will show the first 12 characters of the message title so that it is possible to identify it rapidly;

- use keys **↔/∨** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to the message to be displayed;

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to display the entire message; to scroll the message quickly press **↔/∨** (7-fig. 1).

If the message contains a telephone number or a position at the end of the message **"Call Number"** and/or **"Position"** will be displayed.

After reading the message, press **CLR** (15-fig. 1) to go back to the stored message list.

WARNING When Connect is turned on, messages with traffic information received more than 24 hours before are automatically deleted.

Deleting a message

Proceed as follows:

- recall the involved message according to the sequence described in the previous paragraph;

- use keys **↔/∨** (7-fig. 1) to move the cursor **▶** to **"Delete?"** at the end of the message; then press **OK** (13-fig. 1);

- the display will show the following message: **"Delete message?"**;

- press **OK/MENU** (13-fig. 1) to confirm and go back to the stored message list, otherwise press **CLR** (15-fig. 1).

WARNING When Connect is turned on, messages with traffic information received more than 24 hours before are automatically deleted.

How to call a telephone number contained in a message

To call a phone number contained in a message (e.g.: the number of a hotel or a restaurant) proceed as follows:

- recall the involved message according to the sequence described in paragraph “Recalling stored messages”;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to move the cursor \blacktriangleright to “**Call Number**” at the end of the message, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);
- the request to call the selected number is displayed;
- press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**) to start the call, otherwise press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**).

Displaying the position of the destination contained in a message

To display the position of the destination contained in a message (e.g.: hotel or restaurant), proceed as follows:

- recall the involved message according to the sequence described in paragraph “Recalling stored messages”;
- use keys $\overline{\wedge}/\overline{\vee}$ (**7-fig. 1**) to move the cursor \blacktriangleright to “**Position**” at the end of the message, then press **OK/MENU** (**13-fig. 1**);

– the display will show the following options (**fig. 23**):

Dist.: refers to the straight line distance to the required destination;

Dir.: an arrow shows the straight line direction to be followed for locating the required destination.

To quit the “**Position**” option, press **CLR** (**15-fig. 1**) when receiving the **Targasys** message.

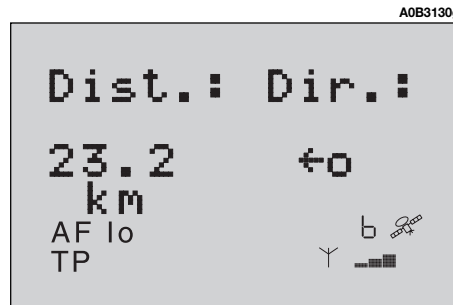


fig. 23

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM

The sound system is fitted with antitheft protection system consisting of the following:

- 4-digit secret code
- antitheft led.

The protection system makes the sound system unserviceable after it has been removed from the dashboard in case of theft.

SECRET CODE

The 4-digit secret code is indicated on the Card delivered with the car.

Keep the secret code in a safe place (e.g. together with the car documents), but not on-board.

SECRET CODE ENTRY

The secret code shall be entered in the following cases:

a - when the car is delivered by your Dealership

b - whenever the battery has been disconnected (e.g. servicing operations at Alfa Romeo Authorised Services).

For instance, if the code number on your Card is 4613, apply the following procedure:

- turn the sound system on by pressing the **"ON"** key (**1-fig. 1**)
- insert the SIM card support in its housing (**17-fig. 1**) within 15 seconds after pressing **ON**
- the display will show **"CODE"** (the code entry is requested)
- press once key **"4"** on the keypad. **"4 - - -"** will be shown on the display

– press once key **"6"**.
"4 6 - -" will be shown on the display

– press once key **"1"**.
"4 6 1 -" will be shown on the display

– press once key **"3"**.
"4 6 1 3" will be shown on the display

– press **OK/MENU (13-fig. 1)** to confirm.

If a mistake is made when entering the code, press **CLR (15-fig. 1)** to clear the last digit.

WARNING If a wrong code number has been entered, the sound system goes back to its standby condition to let a new code entry (the message **"CODE"** will be displayed again).

The sound system switching off during the code entry operations is considered as a wrong code entry.

WARNING After three unsuccessful code entries, 4 horizontal dashes “----”, appear on the display, the sound system is locked and it is not possible to enter any other code for at least one hour. Since it is possible to program the system automatic switching off after the ignition key has been turned to **STOP**, check that it has been set for the same time period or a period longer than 60 minutes (see “Switching off with timer” in the Radio Setup menu).

After being in these conditions for an hour, the sound system goes back to its standby condition for the code entry (“**CODE**” will be displayed again).

The time the sound system is under antitheft protection is counted only if the radio is on. In the event of power supply interruption when the sound system is in antitheft mode, the time elapsed is reset and when the sound system is turned on again, time counting starts from zero (you will have to wait for another hour).

Code request activation/deactivation

As previously stated, whenever the battery power supply is interrupted it is necessary to re-enter the access code.

This system has the option to activate the code request or not. Apply the following procedure:

- when the system is off, keep keys **1** and **4** simultaneously pressed on the keypad (**9-fig. 1**);

- turn the system on by pressing **ON (1-fig. 1)** or inserting the SIM card support (**17-fig. 1**) into its housing;

- enter the code number as requested on the display using the keypad (**9-fig. 1**).

As a result of the previous setting, such procedure activates/deactivates the code request in the event of a subsequent system power supply interruption (battery disconnection).

WARNING Remember that if the code request is deactivated, the system is not protected in case of theft.

ANTITHEFT SYSTEM LED

SIM card led blinking

After the SIM card has been removed, the led placed under the card-holder housing (**17-fig. 1**) starts blinking as antitheft protection indication.

This takes place if “**Card LED ON**” has been set in the Setup menu.

For further information see paragraph “Programmable functions - Antitheft indication”.

Switching off the blinking led

To turn off the blinking led fit down the SIM card support until hearing the locking click, then set “**Card LED OFF**” in the Setup menu.

TECHNICAL DATA

AMPLIFIER

Output power: 4 x 23 W, sinusoidal
in compliance with
DIN 45 324 with
14,4 V
4 x 35 W maximum
power

RADIO

Frequency bands:

FM 87,5 - 108 MHz

MW 531 - 1602 kHz

LW 153 - 279 kHz

FM sensitivity: 0,9 μ V with a sig-
nal/noise ratio of
26 dB

FM waveband:
30 - 16 000 Hz

TELEPHONE

Standard: GSM

Frequency band:

Transmission 890 - 915 MHz

Reception 935 - 960 MHz

Transmission performance:

Class 2/8 Watt

Sensitivity: -108 dBm

Impedance:

Aerial connection: 50 Ohm

Telephone microphone: 660 Ohm.

TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

For technical assistance to Connect system
contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services.

GLOSSARY

AF (Alternative Frequency)

Function which enables the radio to stay tuned into the selected FM station, even when crossing areas served by broadcasting stations with different frequency.

The RDS system controls the received signal intensity and quality, thus tuning to the broadcasting station with the strongest signal.

AOC (Advice Of Charge)

Function used to enter the cost per unit and a given credit, thus linking the telephone to a limited number of telephone calls.

AUD (Audio)

Function used to adjust bass and treble and sound distribution between right/left and front/rear speakers.

BND (BaND)

Function enabling to change the frequency band.

Call forwarding

Function used to make a phone call without interrupting the call in progress. It is also possible to pass from one call to the other. During a phone call, it is possible to answer another call when the incoming call warning is heard.

CD-Changer

Multiple CD-player.

Cell Broadcast

Service for receiving/sending short text messages forwarded through specific channels (see also SMS). The network provider can give further information and a list of available channels.

CLR (Clear)

Function used to go back to the previous menu without storing settings

Connect

Telematic information and assistance services run by **Targasys**, see "Connect use" in "Targasys services" section.

DSC (Direct Software Control)

Function enabling to change Manufacturer's default settings.

EON (Enhanced Other Networks)

Function used to tune the radio automatically to a station broadcasting traffic announcements while you are listening to another one.

Group of User

It is used to limit the telephone use to a given number of users. The network provider can give you more detailed information.

GSM (Global System for Mobile communication)

Mobile phone system based on digital technology.

This system assures safe and high quality communications because it is based on an automatic encoding system.

Handset

Handset with support.

IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity)

International code for mobile telephone identification.

The IMEI code includes the system serial number, the manufacturer's code and the nation's code.

The IMEI code is set by the manufacturer and can be found on the Card supplied with the system.

Incoming call

The incoming call is a low warning sound indicating that another call is coming when a call is already in progress.

Local/Distant (seek loc/dx)

They refer to two reception sensitivity levels.

1) Distant (maximum sensitivity): enabling tuning to all the stations which can be received.

2) Local (minimum sensitivity), enabling tuning only to those stations whose signal is strong enough, e.g. local stations.

Mailbox

Electronic mailbox by the network provider where voice messages are recorded. It can be compared to a common answering system.

MEM (Memory)

Key used to recall stored data (e.g. radio stations, phone numbers, etc...).

MIX

Random CD/tracks playing.

Mute

Function muting the audio source being listened to when making/receiving a call.

PIN1 (Personal Identification Number)

Personal secret code preventing unauthorised people from using the SIM card.

The PIN code is requested every time the SIM card is inserted.

PIN2

Code for special functions.

WARNING PIN 1 and PIN 2 are supplied with the SIM card and can be changed.

PUK (Personal Unlock Key)

8-digit code to be used to unlock the SIM card.

The PUK code must be used when the SIM card is locked after three unsuccessful entries of the PIN code.

Radiotext

RDS additional information given by the station, e.g.: regarding the broadcast program.

RDS (Radio Data System)

It is a radiotelephone information system based on the 57 kHz subcarrier of FM usual transmissions.

This function is used to receive information such as traffic announcements and the station name. It also enables automatic re-tuning to a broadcaster transmitting the same program with a stronger signal.

The other RDS functions are the following:

AF:	Alternative frequency
EON:	Enhanced Other Network
RT:	Radiotext
TA:	Traffic announcements
TP:	Traffic program.

International roaming

Function used for calling abroad with a network provider different from that of the inserted SIM card.

Scroll

Rapid scrolling of a list

Rapid selection

Function used to call a stored telephone number by pressing only one key.

SIM (Subscriber Identification Module)

The SIM card is a user identification module having a credit card format.

The SIM card stores all the data required for:

- user's identification;
- phone number allocation;
- private phone book.

The SIM card can also be used with any GSM mobile phone.

SMS (Short Message Service)

Function used with a GSM telephone to send/receive short text messages and to display them.

If the telephone is off or not available, the text is temporarily stored in the network until the user recalls it.

SRC (Source)

Switching over available sources: (Radio, CD Changer and Aux); switchover from Telephone to Radio.

TA (Traffic Announcement)

To receive traffic info.

This function is on when "TA" is shown on the display.

Targasy

Fiat group service company.

Telematic

Word deriving from Telecommunication and Information Technology. Telematic describes connection to services regarding positions (e.g. automatic position identification in case of a call for assistance) by means of a communication device (in this case: a GSM telephone).

TP (Traffic Program)

Function enabling to tune to radio stations broadcasting traffic bulletins.

When this function is on, "TP" is shown on the display.

TS (Travelstore)

Function enabling to store automatically the radio stations with the strongest signal.

NAVIGATOR

ADVICE	98	R-TXT FUNCTION	114
IMPORTANT NOTES FOR USE AND ROAD SAFETY	98	TIM FUNCTION	115
CARE AND MAINTENANCE	99	COMPACT DISC PLAYER (CD)	117
COMPACT DISCS	99	INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD	117
CONTROLS	100	PLAYING A CD	118
CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL	102	CD FUNCTIONS	118
OPERATION	103	SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS	119
SWITCHING THE NAVIGATOR ON/OFF	103	SCANNING TRACKS	119
SELECTING FUNCTIONS	103	MIX FUNCTION.....	119
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME	104	SCAN FUNCTION	119
DISPLAY	104	REPEAT FUNCTION	120
ADJUSTING THE SOUND	105	PROGRAM FUNCTION	120
RADIO	106	CD NAME FUNCTON	122
LISTENING TO THE RADIO	106	CD-CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)	124
SELECTING THE WAVEBAND	106	INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD	124
TUNING TO FM STATIONS	106	PLAYING A CD WITH THE INTERNAL CD PLAYER	126
STORING STATIONS	107	PLAYING A CD WITH THE CD-Changer (where fitted)	127
SCAN FUNCTION	109	TURNING ON THE CD-Changer (where fitted)	127
RDS FUNCTION	110	SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS	129
REG FUNCTION	111	RANDOM PLAYBACK	129
PTY FUNCTION	111	MIX FUNCTION.....	129
TA FUNCTION	112	SCANNING TRACKS	130
TMC FUNCTION	113	REPEAT FUNCTION	131
SHARX FUNCTION	114	PROGRAM FUNCTION	131
		CD NAME FUNCTON	133

SATELLITE NAVIGATION	135	SWITCHING ROUTE TIME	
ROUTE GUIDANCE	135	INFORMATION ON AND OFF	163
ENTERING THE DESTINATION	136	MANUAL POSITION INDICATION	163
ENTERING SPECIAL DESTINATIONS	143	NAVIGATION SIMULATION	164
USING STORED DESTINATIONS	146	BASIC SETTINGS	165
STORING THE CURRENT POSITION	147	OPENING THE SETTINGS MENU	165
ACTIVE NAVIGATION	148	ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY	165
ROUTE GUIDANCE	148	ADJUSTING POWER-ON, TA ANNOUNCEMENT,	
STOPPING NAVIGATION	149	MESSAGE AND GALA VOLUME	167
CHANGING THE AUDIO SOURCE	150	SETTING THE CLOCK	169
TUNING THE RADIO	150	SELECTING THE LANGUAGE	171
NO MAP NAVIGATION	150	CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM	172
DYNAMIC TRAVEL GUIDE	151	SYSTEM TEST	172
TOURIST GUIDE INFORMATION	152	CALIBRATION	174
ROUTE LIST	153	GPS STATUS	175
DESTINATION MEMORY	153	SECURITY	176
STORING STORED DESTINATIONS	154	RESETTING DEFAULT SETTINGS	177
DELETING STORED DATA	155	ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM	180
ENTERING AND EDITING DESTINATION SHORT NAMES	156	GENERAL INFORMATION	180
GPS STATUS AND POSITION INFORMATION	157	CODE CARD	180
AVOIDING TAILBACKS DURING NAVIGATION	157	ENTERING THE SECURITY CODE	180
LOCKING A ROUTE SECTION WITHIN A ROUTE LIST	158	TECHNICAL DATA	182
CUSTOMISING THE ROUTE	159	RADIO	182
DEFINING THE CAR POSITION	160	COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND CD-Changer	182
RECEIVING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS		AUDIO	183
DURING NAVIGATION	162	SATELLITE NAVIGATION	183
SWITCHING VOICE MESSAGES ON AND OFF	162	SYSTEM TECHNICAL DATA	183
SWITCHING THE LAST 10 DESTINATION			
MEMORY ON AND OFF	162		

ADVICE

IMPORTANT NOTES FOR USE AND ROAD SAFETY

The Satellite Navigator is an integrated system which allows to easily operate the main functions of your car.

To avoid creating dangerous situations for yourself and others in use of the Navigator, please pay attention to the following points:

- the Navigator must be used keeping full control of the car; it is necessary to stop before performing the various operations;
- serious accidents can be caused by distractions or by not following the flow of traffic;
- get to know the Navigator and its controls before starting off;
- enter the destination only when the car is stationary;
- close the front panel when travelling.

The Navigator allows you to reach your destination, indicating each route change stored on the navigation CD. In fact, in calculating the route, the system takes account of all the information stored concerning the roads, advising the best route. However it cannot take account of the traffic, sudden interruptions or any other inconvenience.

The Navigator helps the driver while driving by suggesting, vocally and graphically the best route to be followed to reach the preset destination.

WARNING The suggestions given by the Navigator do not exempt the driver from full responsibility due to driving behaviour and compliance with road and other traffic regulations. The responsibility for road safety always and anyway lies with the car's driver.

In carrying out any manoeuvre it is always necessary to follow the rules of the road, regardless of the advice given by the navigation system. If you leave the suggested route, the Navigator will calculate a new one and suggest it to you.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

The structure of the navigation system ensures long years of operation with no need for particular maintenance. In the event of a fault, contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services.

Clean the front panel and display only using a soft, dry antistatic cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface.

Treat the display with care. Do not use pointed or hard objects which might scratch and damage it.

Clean the display with a soft, clean and dry cloth. Do not use solvents which might corrode and damage the display.



Do not press on the display when cleaning. Be careful not to knock the display with pointed or hard objects and avoid touching with the hands. In the event of breakage, do not touch the fluid that could come out; wash immediately with water and soap in case of contact.

COMPACT DISCS

If a Compact Disc is used on the Sound system, remember that the presence of dirt or marks on Compact Discs may cause skipping when playing and poor sound quality. The same happens if Compact Discs are bent by accident.

To obtain optimum playing conditions we give the following advice:

- only use audio Compact Discs with the brand:



- carefully clean all Compact Discs of any fingerprints and dust using a soft cloth. Support Compact Discs on the edges and clean from the centre outwards;

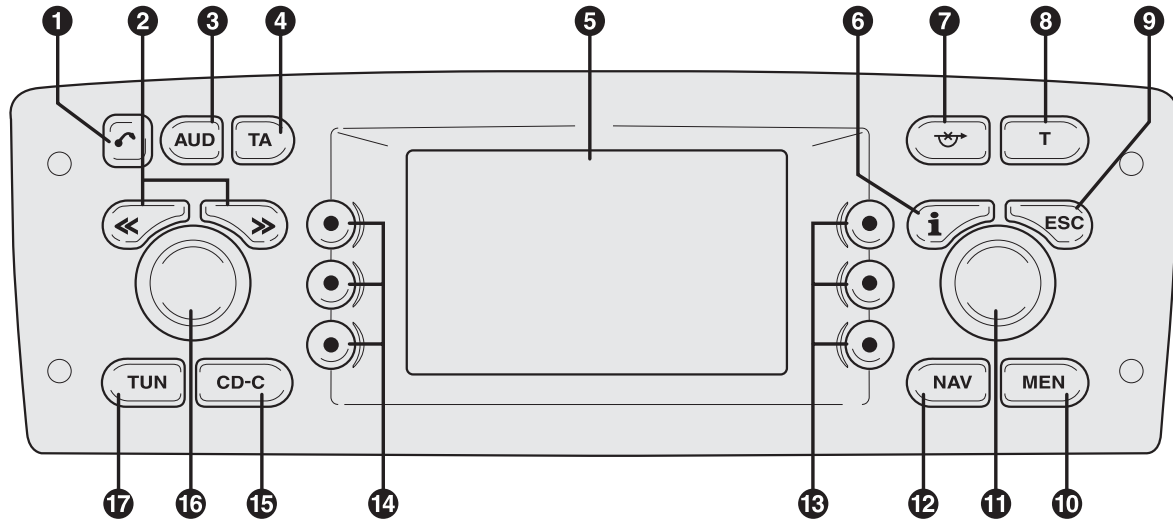
- never use chemical products for cleaning (e.g. spray cans, antistatics or thinners) as they might damage the surface of Compact Discs;




- after listening to them put Compact Discs back in their boxes to avoid marking or scoring which would cause skipping when playing;

- do not expose Compact Discs to direct sunlight, high temperatures or damp for prolonged lengths of time to prevent them from bending;

- do not stick labels or write on the recorded side of a CD.

CONTROLS



- 1** -  button to open the front panel
- 2** -  selector. The functions of this selector depend on the menu and type of operation
- 3** - **AUD** button to display the audio menu
- 4** - **TA** button to switch the RDS-TA (Traffic Announcement) function on and off
- 5** - **Display**
- 6** - Info key **i**
- a)** press this button when travelling to repeat the last navigation voice message and display the active destination
- b)** to fully display menu options ending with "..."
- 7** -  button to switch the "TRAFFIC AHEAD" (alternative route) function on

8 - **T** button to switch the TIM (Traffic Information Memory) and TMC (Traffic Message Channel) functions on

9 - **ESC** button

a) to quit the menu without saving settings

b) to go back to the previous screen/menu

10 - **MEN** button to display the setup menu

11 - **Knob/button**

The knob/button performs the following functions:

a) turn: to select the items on the display

b) press: to confirm the selection (OK button)

c) press for longer than two seconds: to display 2-D or 3-D icons with active navigation and to confirm entered data.

12 - **NAV** button to switch the navigation function on

13 - **Multifunction keys** , the function of these keys depends on the menu

14 - **Multifunction keys** , the function of these keys depends on the menu

15 - **CD-C** to switch the CD (if an audio CD is inserted) or the CD-CHANGER on

16 - **Knob/button**

The knob/button performs the following functions:

a) turn: to adjust the volume and switch to Mute

b) prolonged press (about 2 seconds): to switch the sound/navigation

c) brief press (less than 2 seconds): Mute

17 - **TUN** to turn on the Radio

18 - Compact Disc slot

19 - Compact Disc eject button

20 - Led indicating that the (audio or navigation) CD is inserted in the slot

A0B0307m

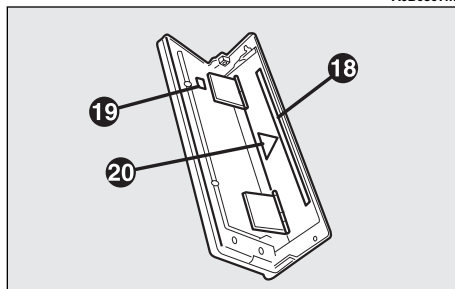


fig. 2

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL (where fitted) (fig. 3)

The main functions of the sound system are repeated on the steering wheel, which facilitates control.

1. Volume highering button
2. Volume lowering button
3. Mute button
4. Radio frequency range select button (FM1, FM2, FMT, FMC, MW) and available audio source (Radio - CD-Changer)
5. Multifunction key:
 - Radio: manual station tuning
 - CD: **brief press**: next track selection **long press**: current track fast forward
 - CD Changer (where fitted): **brief press**: next track selection **long press**: current track fast forward

6. Multifunction key:
 - Radio: manual station tuning
 - CD: **brief press**: previous track selection **long press**: current track fast backward
 - CD Changer (where fitted): **brief press**: previous track selection **long press**: current track fast forward

Volume adjustment keys (1), (2) and (3)

The volume adjustment keys (1) and (2) and for activation/deactivation of the Mute function (3) work just like the sound system corresponding keys.

Radio frequency range and audio source selection key (4)

To cyclically select the frequency ranges and audio sources available briefly and repeatedly press key (4).

Available frequencies/audio sources are: FM1, FM2, FMT, FMC, MW, CDC.

Multifunction keys (5) and (6)

Using the multifunction keys (5) and (6) it is possible to call the preset radio stations or to select the next or previous CD/track when playing the CD-Changer.

Press button (5) to choose the next preset stations or play the next CD/track.

Press button (6) to choose the previous preset stations or play the previous CD/track.

A0B0357m

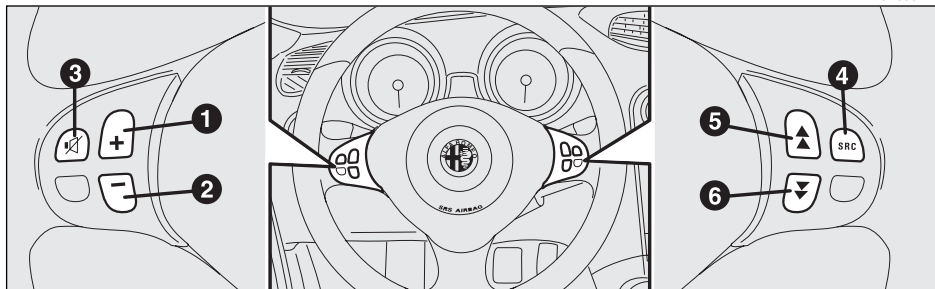


fig. 3

OPERATION

SWITCHING THE NAVIGATOR ON/OFF

Press the knob/button **(16)**. The sound system will automatically switch to the last active sound source at the previously selected volume.

WARNING The sound source is usually played at the last selected volume when the system is switched off and back on. However, if the volume was higher than the preset volume, the sound source will be played at the preset volume.

To set the power-on volume, see “Adjusting power-on, TA announcements, message and gala volume” in “Basic settings (Setup)” section.

Switching on and off with engine off

The Navigator can also be operated when the engine is not running (ignition key at **STOP**).

Press the knob/button **(16)** for approximately one second.

WARNING The device will automatically be switched off when the ignition key is at **STOP** after approximately one hour to safeguard the car battery. Start the engine to reset the timeout.

SELECTING FUNCTIONS

To select the required audio source, proceed as follows:

- press TUN **(17)** for Radio;
- press CD-C **(15)** for CD player or CD-Changer (where fitted);
- press NAV **(12)** to switch on the navigation function.

The specific main menu/screen will be displayed for each selected source.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

To turn the volume up: turn the knob/button (16) clockwise.

To turn the volume down: turn the knob/button (16) anticlockwise.

The volume is graphically shown on the display during the adjustment (sound source main menu only) (**fig. 4**).

WARNING The volume of a navigation voice message can be changed, regardless of the basic sound source volume.



WARNING

If you drive with the volume too high you put both your own life and that of others in jeopardy. You should adjust the volume so that you can hear noises from outside the car (e.g. horns, ambulance/police sirens, etc.).

DISPLAY (fig. 5)

The display will switch to night-time operation (reversed colours) when the side/tail-lights are switched on (**fig. 6**). This function can be switched off if you need to travel in daytime with the headlights on (see “Adjusting the display” in the “Basic settings” section).

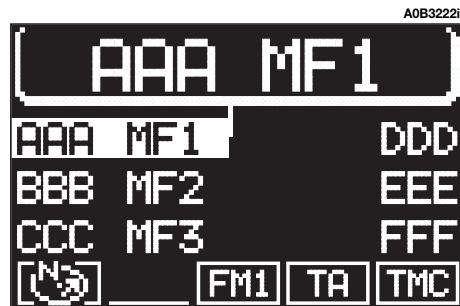
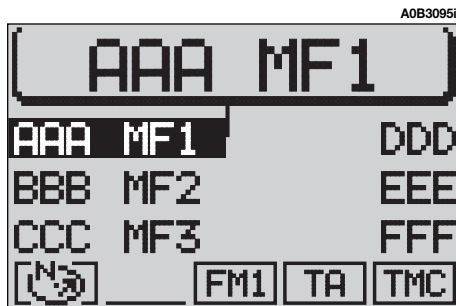
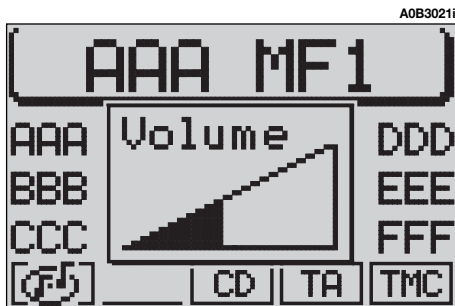


fig. 4

fig. 5

fig. 6

ADJUSTING THE SOUND (AUD MENU)

The “bass” and “treble” can be separately adjusted for each sound source. The Balance, Fader and Loudness settings are in common for all sources.

Proceed as follows to adjust the sound:

1 select the required audio source (Radio, CD or CD Changer, where fitted) using TUN keys (**17**), CD-C (**15**)

2 press the AUD key (**3**) to display the audio menu for adjusting sound (**fig. 7**)

3 turn the knob/button (**11**) to set to the required menu option

4 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm and select the function to be adjusted (“BASS”, “TREBLE”, etc.) (**fig. 8**)

5 turn the knob/button (**11**) to adjust, as required.

WARNING If the car is fitted with Bose HI-FI system, Loudness function cannot be adjusted (**fig. 9**).

To store the edited values, press the knob/button (**11**).

To return to the previous menu **without storing** the edited values, press the ESC button (**9**).

WARNING The display will automatically return to the previous menu if no button is pressed for longer than 30 seconds.

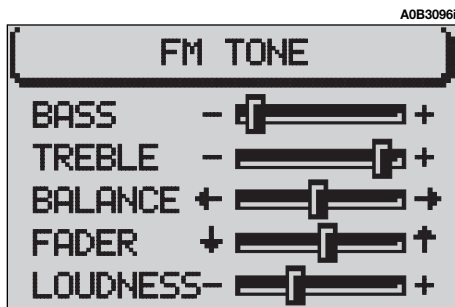


fig. 7

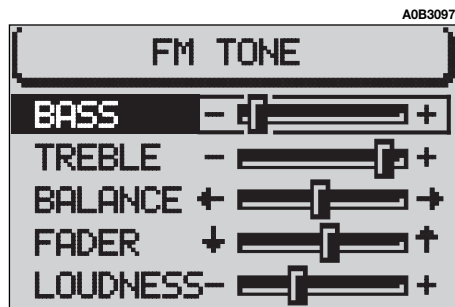


fig. 8

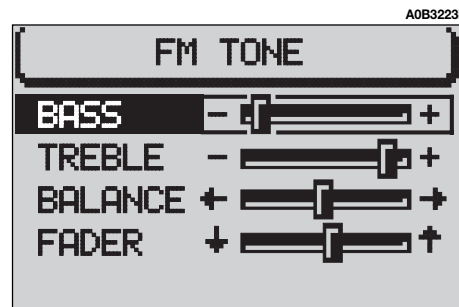


fig. 9

RADIO

LISTENING TO THE RADIO

The main Radio menu (**fig. 10**) will appear after pressing the TUN button (**17**). The station tuned to before switching the Navigator off and the six stations available in the waveband will appear in the upper row of the display. With the exception of the AUDIO menu, the presence of an audio or navigation CD, the tuning waveband (e.g. FM1), TA or TMC state are always displayed at the bottom of the display.

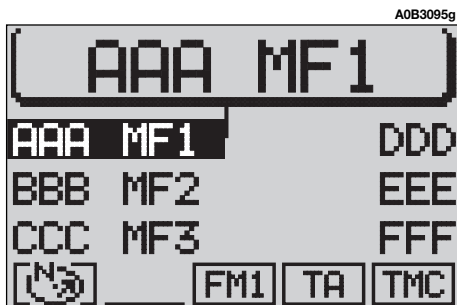


fig. 10

SELECTING THE WAVEBAND

The device receives stations in the FM and MW frequencies (**fig. 11**). Press TUN (**17**) to select the required waveband in Radio mode.

Tuning radio stations

The multiple function buttons **13** and **14** are used to select preset stations (press briefly) and to store other stations (press longer).



fig. 11

TUNING TO FM STATIONS

Automatic tuning

1 Press the MEN button (**10**), in Radio mode to display the Radio menu (**fig. 12**)

2 press the (**14**) button next to SEARCH until ">" or ">>" appear (the default setting is ">>").

3 press either >> or << on switch (**2**) to start the station search.

WARNING Only stations broadcasting traffic announcements will be stored when the TA function is on (TP message on the display).

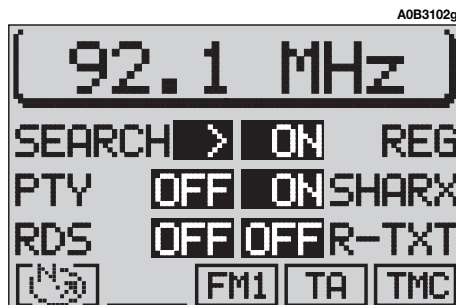


fig. 12

Manual tuning

To manually tuning to a station, proceed as follows:

1 switch the RDS function off (see “RDS function” in this section) to display the frequencies

2 in Radio mode, press the MEN button (**10**), the Radio menu will appear on the display (**fig. 12**)

3 press (**14**) next to SEARCH until > is displayed

4 press >> or << on selector (**2**) to start manual station tuning.

The frequency will gradually change in 100 kHz steps in the FM waveband and in 9 kHz steps in the MW waveband.

STORING STATIONS

Up to 24 FM stations in the four wavebands (FM1, FM2, FMT and FMC) and six MW stations can be stored.

Manual storage

Proceed as follows to manually store the stations:

1 in Radio mode, press TUN (**17**). The Radio functions menu will appear on the display (**fig. 13**)

2 select the required FM storage waveband, i.e. FM1, FM2, FMT, FMC or the MW waveband with button (**13**) or button (**14**). The system will automatically return to the main radio menu as soon as the selection is made

3 tune the station with button >> or << on switch (**2**)

4 press button (**13**) or (**14**) corresponding to the selected waveband and hold it pressed until the volume is muted (stored done signal). The frequency or the name of the stored station will appear on the display under the selected position.



fig. 13

T-STORE automatic storage

The system can automatically store the six strongest stations in the FMT storage waveband.

With TA function (Traffic Announcement) on, only the 6 stations with the strongest signal (broadcasting traffic bulletins) are stored.

WARNING The T-STORE function will replace the previously stored stations.

Proceed as follows to start the T-STORE automatic storage procedure:

- 1) in Radio mode, press TUN (17). The Radio function menu will appear on the display
- 2) press the (13) button next to PAGE 2
- 3) press (14) to display T-STORE (fig. 14)

When the Travelstore function is on, the upper row of the display will show the operation progress in percentage.

At the end of the storage procedure, the system will automatically switch over to the FMT waveband and the stored stations will be played for a short while.

Automatic storage TMCSTORE

The Navigator can automatically store the six strongest stations broadcasting in the area that you are travelling in, in the FMC storage waveband.

WARNING The TMCSTORE function will replace the previously stored stations in the FMC waveband.

WARNING The TMCSTORE function can be activated only if the navigation CD (featuring TMC info - in this case TMC is written on the CD cover) relevant to the country that you are travelling in has been inserted once at least.

To start TMCSTORE proceed as follows:

- 1) in Radio mode, press TUN (17). The Radio function menu will appear on the display (fig. 15)
- 2) press button (13) next to PAGE 2
- 3) press (14) to display TMCSTORE (fig. 15)



fig. 14

fig. 15

When TMCSTORE function is on, the upper row of the display will show the operation progress in percentage.

At the end of the storage procedure, the stations stored in the FMC waveband will be played for a short while, then the radio will tune automatically to the first stored station.

WARNING Automatic station storage through the TMCSTORE function could require a long time since scanning of TMC stations that can be received in the frequency range is performed.

SCAN FUNCTION

The SCAN function is used to scan all the stations which can be received in the waveband. Each station will be played for ten seconds. The SCAN function will end automatically after running a complete search. If the TA function is on, the system will only include stations broadcasting traffic announcements (the TA or TP symbol will appear in the lower row of the display).

To start the SCAN function, proceed as follows:

- 1) in Radio mode, press TUN (17), the Radio menu will be displayed
- 2) press button (13) next to PAGE 2

- 3) press (13) to display SCAN (fig. 16): scanning is started and during scanning the display will show SCAN (fig. 17)

Press ESC (9), to end the SCAN function. The search will stop at the last station.



fig. 16



fig. 17

TMC-SCAN function

This function is used to scan all the stations that can be received in the FMC waveband.

Proceed as follow to start the TMC-SCAN search:

- 1) in Radio mode, press TUN (17): the display will show the Radio menu (fig. 13)
- 2) press the (13) button next to PAGE 2
- 3) press button (13) next to TMC-SCAN (fig. 18)



fig. 18

The search will start and TMC-SCAN in progress will appear on the display.

Press the ESC button (9) to end the TMC-SCAN function or to play a found station. The search will stop at the last station.



fig. 19

RDS FUNCTION (RADIO DATA SYSTEM)

The Radio Data System is a service provided by radio stations to facilitate FM waveband tuning.

The RDS allows - for enabled stations - automatic tuning to the best frequency of the selected station (alternative frequency function). This means that you can listen to the station without retuning when you change area. Obviously, the station must be received in the area that you are travelling in.

Furthermore, the RDS displays the station name (Program Service function, up to eight characters) and the traffic announcement status: the Navigator will seek the best frequency of the required station.

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to use the RDS:

- 1) in Radio mode, press MEN (10). The Radio menu (fig. 19) will be displayed

2) repeatedly press the button **(14)** next to the RDS message to select the required operations (VAR, FIX or OFF) (the default setting is VAR) described below:

FIX Switches the Radio RDS function on. Since some stations use RDS to broadcast advertisements in addition to the station name, you can decide to display only the station name.

VAR Basic setting with which the Radio RDS function is fully active. Advertising will also be shown on the display.

OFF Switches the RDS function off. Stations are tuned to by indicating the frequency on the display (example: 87.5). Under this condition also the TA function is off.

REG FUNCTION

At certain times of the day, some stations broadcast different local (regional) programmes. When the function is off and you are tuned to a local station in a certain area, you will receive a new local programme when entering a new area.

Switching on and off

Tune to FM and proceed as follows to switch the REG function on:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN **(10)**, the Radio menu (**fig. 20**) will be displayed

2) press the button **(13)** next to REG. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is OFF (i.e. the function is not active). When the function is on, the system will change the frequency only when the current frequency can no longer be received.

PTY FUNCTION (PROGRAM TYPE)

PTY is an RDS function. The stations use PTY to broadcast the contents of their programmes (POP, ROCK, etc.) to help you make your choice.

The programme contents will appear for a few seconds when the PTY function is on and a new station is tuned to. The contents will not be displayed if the station does not use the PTY function.



fig. 20

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the PTY function on and off:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**), the Radio menu (**fig. 20**) will be displayed

2) press button (**14**) next to PTY. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is ON.

PTY (**fig. 21**) will be displayed when tuning to a radio station when the function is on.

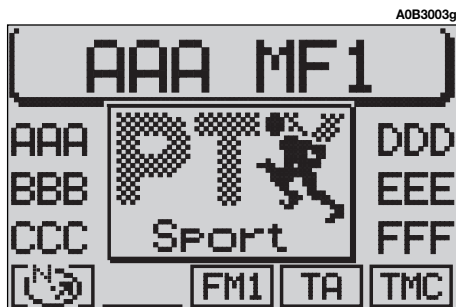


fig. 21

Alarm messages

When the PTY function is on, the system can receive alarm messages (example: weather conditions). In this case, the warning message will appear on the display and the announcement will be made at the volume set for traffic announcements.

To stop the alarm message, press either MEN (**10**) or ESC (**9**).

TA FUNCTION (TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT)

Switching on and off

This function can be switched on only in Radio mode in the FM waveband.

When listening to the CD source, the CD changer (where fitted) or when the navigation system is on and the TA button (**4**) is pressed, the radio will switch to the FM waveband in background and activate the TA function. This will not change the sound source and the message "TA" will appear on the display.

When the TA function is on, you can listen to traffic announcements even when the CD player or CD changer (where fitted) is on or in navigation mode. The system will automatically switch to the station broadcasting the traffic announcement. At the end of the announcement, the Navigator will automatically return to the previous source.

Press the TA button (**4**) to switch the TA function off.

WARNING In Radio mode, with the TA function on, a beep will be heard if you leave the area where the station broadcasting traffic announcements can be received. In this case, an automatic TP (Traffic Program) search will be started.

Interrupting traffic announcements

When the TA function is on, press either TA (4) or MEN (10) or change station to interrupt the traffic announcement.

TMC FUNCTION (TRAFFIC MESSAGE CHANNEL)

The TMC function is used to receive traffic information which is then analysed by the Navigator in order to “guide” the driver to the required preset destination.

Since only some stations are enabled to provide the TMC function, it is possible that traffic information in certain areas cannot be received.

When the “Dynamic travel guide” function is on (see “Dynamic travel guide” in chapter “Navigation”), the Navigator will tune automatically to a TMC station.

The “TMC” message will appear in the lower row of the display when a TMC station is selected.

Up to six TMC stations can be stored in the FMC storage waveband (see paragraph “Automatic storage TMCSTORE”).

Through this function it is therefore possible to store the six strongest stations broadcasting in the area that you are travelling in.

Displaying TMC stored messages

To display TMC traffic messages, proceed as follows:

- 1) press the T button (8)
- 2) press (13) to display T-INFO (fig. 22)

The display will show the last traffic message. The upper line will show the message number and the number of stored messages. Number 1 always indicates the last message.

3) use the knob/button (11) to select one of the messages

4) after reading the required traffic messages, press T (8) or ESC (9) to quit

WARNING TMC messages referring to roads distant more than 100 km from the current car position, are not processed by the TMC function.



fig. 22

SHARX FUNCTION

Occasional interference in the signals can occur when tuned to FM radio stations caused by stations broadcasting on very close frequencies. The SHARX function reduces such interference.

Switching on and off

To switch the SHARX function on and off, proceed as follows:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**), the display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 23**)

2) press (**13**) to display SHARX. ON or OFF will be displayed. The default setting is ON.

R-TXT FUNCTION

R-TXT option enables to receive and display text messages provided by certain RDS stations. In addition to the station name this function provides also information on the programme being broadcast or shows the title of the piece of music being played.

Switching on and off

To switch the Radiotext function on and off, proceed as follows:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**): the display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 23**)

2) press button (**13**) next to R-TXT. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is OFF.

When the display shows the message “Radiotext” and you want to change station, proceed as follows:

1) in Radio mode, press TUN (**17**) or (**13**) or (**14**): the display will show the Radio menu, excluding the Radiotext function

2) change station: the Radiotext function, if available, will appear on the display

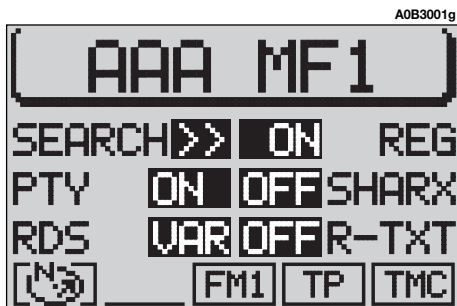


fig. 23

TIM FUNCTION

The device is provided with vocal digital memory. Up to 14 traffic messages having max. overall length equal to or lower than 4 minutes can be stored automatically.

According to the length of the new traffic messages, the oldest ones are cleared.

WARNING Traffic messages longer than four minutes are recorded partly. In this case the message OVERFLOW will appear on the display.

When a new traffic message arrives while you are listening to a TIM message, the latter one is stopped and the new arrived message is transmitted.

Storing traffic messages

Traffic messages (max. 14) are stored automatically when listening to TA stations or when the TIM function is on with the device off.

Messages can be stored for 1 hour or 12 hours (see next paragraph "Choosing how long to store traffic messages").

If listening to a station not broadcasting traffic info, switching the device off with the TIM function on will start automatically the search for a TA station

Choosing how long to store traffic messages

With the device on, proceed as follows to choose how long to store traffic messages:

1) press T **(8)**: the display will show the Traffic menu (**fig. 24**)

2) press **(14)** corresponding to TIM until the required indication is displayed 1H = the message will be stored for 1 hour; 12H = the message will be stored for 12 hours; or OFF (function off)



fig. 24

WARNING When the Traffic menu is displayed, the TIM function can be switched on/off by pressing the T button **(8)** for over 2 seconds.

When switching the device off, the message "GOODBYE" will appear on the display together with the traffic message storage time previously selected.

Listening to stored traffic messages

Proceed as follows:

1) press T **(8)**: to display the Traffic menu **(fig. 24)**

2) press **(13)** for TIM-INFO. The last stored message has the highest number (14) and will be played first; then all the other messages will be played in decreasing sequence. The display will also show the time of arrival of the message being played.

Once the message playing procedure is over, the system will automatically switch over to the last selected sound source (Radio, CD or CD changer).

Proceed as follows to listen to the last selected sound source (Radio, CD or CD changer) without playing all traffic messages:

— press T **(8)** or ESC **(9)**

COMPACT DISC PLAYER (CD)

Audio CDs can be played with the internal CD player or with the CD-Changer (where fitted).

During CD playback, either the track number and the playing time, or the track number only, will appear on the display (according to the settings, see "CD functions" in this section).

The main CD menu (**fig. 25**) shows the number of the tracks on the CD and the track being played is highlighted. A graphic symbol progressively indicating the playing time will appear under the track.



fig. 25

A symbol indicating the audio CD, the CD programmed sequence, the current sound source (CD), and the TA and TMC functions status will appear in the lower row of the display.

INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD

Proceed as follows to insert a CD:

1) press button (1) to open the front panel

2) press button (19) to eject an inserted CD, if any

3) place the audio CD with the label facing upwards in the groove on the open front panel edge

4) delicately push the CD in the slot until the automatic mechanism takes the CD into the player

5) close the front panel.

CD playing will then start automatically. The display will show the main CD menu (**fig. 25**).

To eject the CD proceed as follows:

1) press button (1) to open the front panel

2) press button (19) on the inner side of the front panel (see chapter "Controls"). The CD will be ejected to half of its diameter

3) take the CD from the slot and remove it completely

4) close the front panel.

WARNING Only open the front panel to insert and eject a CD. A beep will be heard if the front panel is left open longer than 30 seconds. Close the front panel to stop the warning signal.

PLAYING A CD (INTERNAL PLAYER)

Playback will start automatically as soon as a CD is inserted.

If you are using another source and a CD is inserted in the internal player, press the CD-C button (15). The main CD menu (fig. 25) will be displayed and the CD playback will start.


CD FUNCTIONS

Proceed as follows if the last source was the CD-Changer (where fitted) and there are one or more audio CDs inside:

1) go to the CDC functions menu by pressing the CD-C button CD-C (15): the display will show the CD Changer menu (fig. 26)

2) press (13) to display the main CD menu (fig. 25) and to start automatically CD playback.

WARNING A warning message will appear on the display if no CD is inserted in the player or if a navigation CD-ROM is inserted and played by mistake.

WARNING Lock symbol  will appear next to CD function menu if there is no audio CD in the internal CD player.

Switching the track playing time/number display on and off

Proceed as follows to display the played track number and the playing time:

1) press the MEN button (10). The CD menu will be displayed

2) press (13) relevant to TIME (fig. 27). ON or OFF will be displayed. The default setting is ON.



fig. 26



fig. 27

Receiving traffic information

To switch the traffic announcement function on and off (see “TA function” in previous section)) when listening to a CD: briefly press the TA button (4). The TA symbol will either appear (on) or disappear (off) in the lower row of the main CD menu.

SELECTING NEXT/ PREVIOUS TRACKS

To select next tracks: briefly press >> on selector (2) as soon as the last track is reached press again >> on selector (2), to return to the first track on the CD.

To play a track again or **to select the previous track** briefly press << on selector (2), as soon as the first track on the CD is reached, press again << on selector (2) to go back to the last CD track.

SCANNING TRACKS

If you want to listen to a certain part of the track being played, you can scan the track: keep << or >> on selector (2) pressed during playback. The track will be scanned forwards or backwards.

MIX FUNCTION (random playback)

Proceed as follows to play the CD tracks in random order:

1) in CD mode, press CD-C (15) to display the CD functions menu (fig. 28)

2) press the button (14) next to MIX.

Press ESC (9) to turn the MIX function off.

The MIX function will end automatically if the SCAN function is switched on.

SCAN FUNCTION (scanning all tracks on a CD)

Proceed as follows to listen to the first part of each track on a CD:

1) in CD mode, go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button (15), the display will show the CD functions menu (fig. 29)

2) press button (14) next to SCAN.

Press the button (14) next to SCAN again to switch the function off.

The SCAN function will automatically end if the MIX is switched on.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.



fig. 28

REPEAT FUNCTION (repeating the CD tracks)

The REPEAT function can be used to repeat a track.

Proceed as follows to switch the REPEAT function on:

1) in CD mode select the required track using key << or >> on selector **(2)**

2) go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button **(15)**, the display will show the CD functions menu **(fig. 30)**

3) press **(14)** to display REPEAT **(fig. 30)**.

4) press CD-C **(15)** to go back to the main CD menu **(fig. 25)**.

The track is repeated until the REPEAT function is switched off. The message RPT will appear in the lower row of the main CD menu.

To quit the REPEAT function, repeat operations described in points **2)** and **4)**.

The REPEAT function will end automatically when either the SCAN or MIX functions are switched on.

PROGRAM FUNCTION (programming the track sequence)

You can programme your favourite track sequence and skip the tracks you do not like.

Setting the required sequence

Proceed as follows to set the required sequence:

1) in CD mode, go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button **(15)**, the display will show the CD functions menu **(fig. 31)**



fig. 29

fig. 30

fig. 31

2) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 32**); if no track has been selected; CLR PRG and RUN cannot be selected (marked with symbol \emptyset).

3) select the first track required using keys << or >> on selector **(2)**.

4) press **(13)** relevant to ADD to enter the first required track

5) select next track using keys << or >> on selector **(2)** and then press **(13)** corresponding to ADD

Repeat the procedure for all the tracks to be added to the sequence. The programmed sequence will be stored even after removing the CD from the player.

WARNING The tracks can only be programmed in sequence (e.g.: 1, 4, 7 etc. and not 3, 1, 4 etc.).

Deleting tracks from the sequence

Proceed as follows to delete the tracks from the sequence:

1) in CD mode, go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button **(15)**, the display will show the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**)

2) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 32**)

3) select the track to be deleted using keys << or >> on selector **(2)**

4) press button **(13)** next to SKIP.

Running/stopping the track sequence

After entering the required track sequence, press button **(13)** next to RUN (**fig. 32**).

The sequence will start from the last selected track. The message TPM will appear on the display.

Press button **(13)** next to RUN to stop a sequence without deleting it.

Deleting a single track sequence

Proceed as follows to delete a programmed track sequence:

1) in CD mode, go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button **(15)**, the display will show the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**)

2) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 32**)

3) press **(14)** relevant to CLR PRG.

A0B3020g

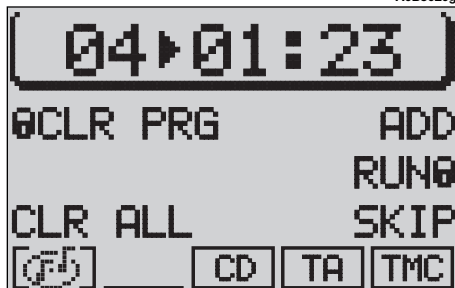


fig. 32

Clearing all stored sequences

Proceed as follows to delete all the stored sequences:

1) in CD mode, go the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button (**15**), the display will show the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**)

2) press (**13**) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 32**)

3) press button (**14**) next to CLR ALL

4) select YES with the knob/button (**11**) at the confirmation message

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

CD NAME FUNCTION (allocating a name to a CD)

This function shall be used to allocate names (max. 7 characters) to CDs.

In saloon versions, fitted with Blaupunkt CD-Changer for 10 discs, the CD name is kept in the memory even after ejecting the CD.

Proceed as follows:

1) press CD-C (**15**) to display the CD functions menu

2) press (**13**) relevant to NAME (**fig. 33**) to display the CD Name menu

3) press (**13**) relevant to EDIT (**fig. 34**) to recall the speller (**fig. 35**)

Entering the name

Proceed as follows:

1) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the first letter of the name to be allocated to the CD: the selected letter will be displayed on the right side of the screen (**fig. 35**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the letter will be entered in the upper line

3) proceed in the same way for the other letters

After completing the name, keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over 2 seconds or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (**11**): the CD name will be stored and the CD functions menu will be displayed. The CD name will be displayed in the CD menu section.

Deleting a letter

After entering the name, to delete a letter, press ESC (9) or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (11).

Deleting the name of the selected CD

Proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously
- 2) press (14) relevant to CLR NAME: the name will be deleted, also when recalling the speller again.

To quit the menu, select symbol ◀ or press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds.

Deleting the names of all the CDs

Proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously
- 2) press (14) relevant to CLR ALL; the display will ask for confirmation, select YES with the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, otherwise press ESC (9)



fig. 33



fig. 34



fig. 35

CD-CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)

INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD

Versions with CD loader

Loading the CD loader (saloon versions) (fig. 36)

To insert CDs apply the following procedure:

1) pull the proper lever (**A**) to open one of the ten loader compartments;

2) load the CD taking care to position the CD with the label set on the proper side otherwise the CD player will not work;

3) close the loader compartment;

4) repeat the same procedure for the other Compact Discs.

How to insert the CD-changer in the CD-player

Move the sliding lid (**B-fig. 37**) rightwards until it locks.

Fit down the loader (**A-fig. 38**) completely into the player observing the direction of the arrow marked on the loader side.

A0B0343m

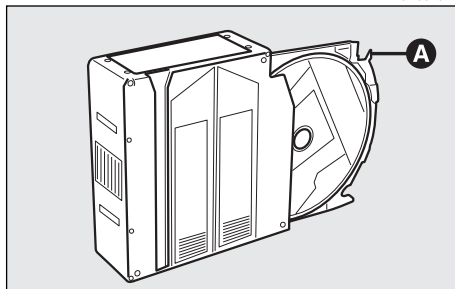


fig. 36

A0B0344m

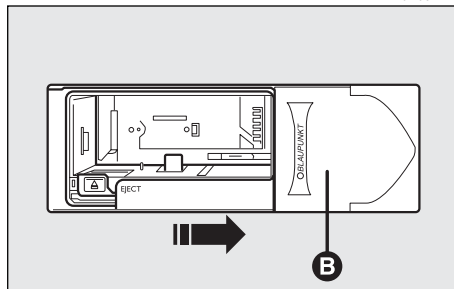


fig. 37

A0B0435m

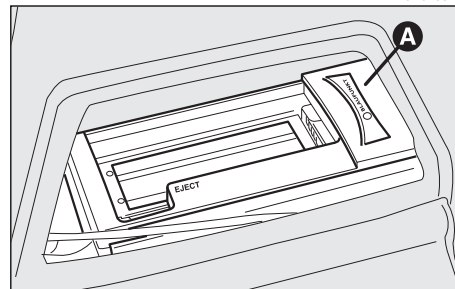


fig. 38

After fitting the CD loader, close the sliding lid (**D-fig. 39**) to prevent foreign matters or dust penetration into the CD player.

Removing the CD loader from the player

Open the sliding lid (**B-fig. 37**), press **EJECT** (**E-fig. 40**) on the player: the loader will be partially ejected.

Carefully remove the loader.

Close the sliding lid.

Ejecting Compact Discs from the loader

Remove the CDs in sequence pulling the lever corresponding to each CD.

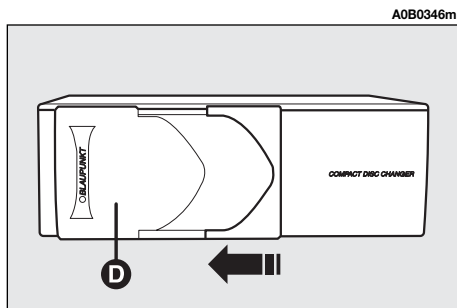


fig. 39

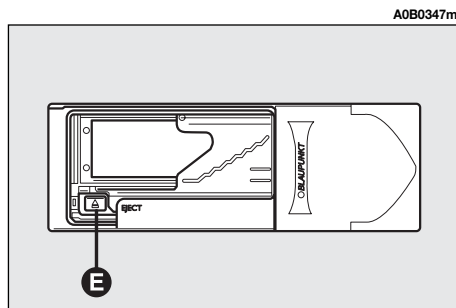


fig. 40

Versions with slots (CD slots)

The CD-Changer is located in the boot inside the left oddment compartment (fig. 41).

WARNING To turn the CD-Changer on, just press one of the buttons set aside the CD slots; the button leds corresponding to the slots loading a CD will turn on.

Inserting/ejecting CDs

To insert CDs: insert the CDs gently, with the label upwards, into the CD-Changer slots to the stop; the powered loading system will load CDs automatically.

To eject CDs: press and keep pressed the button set aside the slot of the CD to be ejected.

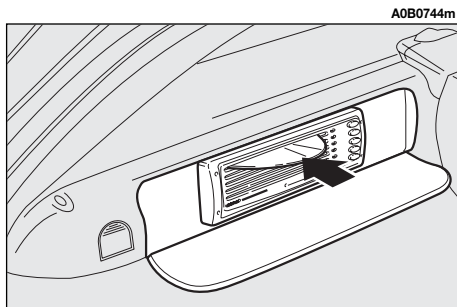


fig. 41

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION CD Changer

The sound system is fitted with a CD Changer antitheft protection system consisting of a four-digit secret code. The protection system makes the CD Changer unusable.

Entering the secret code

Entry of the secret code is required to make the CD Changer work each time it is connected to the sound system.

Connecting the CD Changer to the sound system, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds, followed by four dashes "----".

The secret code consists of four figures from 1 to 6, each corresponding to one of the dashes.

To enter the first digit of the code, press the corresponding button of the preset stations (from 1 to 6). Enter the other code digits in the same way.

If the four figures are not entered within 20 seconds, the display will show again the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds and then four dashes "----". This is not to be considered as an incorrect code entry.

After entering the fourth digit (within 20 seconds), the CD Changer starts working.

If a wrong code is entered, the radio sounds a beep, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and then four dashes "----" to warn the user that it is necessary to enter the correct code.

If a wrong code is entered for three consecutive times the display will show the words "**CDC WAIT**". During the timeout (1 hour) the sound system can however be used and it is possible to select another sound source or to turn the sound system off.

If another sound source is selected it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure after 1 hour. The timeout will start from 1 hour again if the sound system has been turned off.

When timeout is over if the sound system is in CD Changer mode the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure. If the sound system is not in CD Changer mode, no message will be displayed. Select CD Changer, the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds: now the new code entry procedure can be started.

PLAYING A CD WITH THE CD-Changer (where fitted)

Proceed as follows:

1) press CD-C (15), the display will show the last CD source active. If there is a CD in the internal CD player, press again CD-C (15) the display will show the CD-Changer menu

2) press button (13) next to CDC.

TURNING ON THE CD-Changer (where fitted)

Proceed as follows if the last CD source you were listening to was the CD-Changer: press CD-C (15). Playback will start automatically either from the last CD you were listening to or from the first CD in the CD-Changer.

WARNING The system will automatically start playing the audio CD in the internal CD player if this was the last source and the CD is still inside.

Proceed as follows if there is an audio CD in the internal player:

1) go to the CD functions menu by pressing the CD-C button (15), the display will show the CD menu (fig. 46)

2) press (13) relevant to CD.

The main CD-Changer menu (fig. 47) will be displayed. The track number and playing time will appear in the upper row, while in the middle will be displayed the names of the first 5 CDs inserted in the CD-Changer and the option enabling to go to the second page of the menu.




fig. 46



fig. 47

WARNING If no CD is inserted in the CD-Changer or CDs are illegible, playback of these CD will be impossible. The display will show SCAN or a warning message if after switching the system on the CD-Changer was empty or was containing at least an audio CD.

WARNING The “lock” symbol  will be displayed at the side of the abbreviation CDC and selection key (13) will not work, if the CD-Changer is disconnected or not working.

The playing time indication can be switched off, see “Switching the track playing time/number on and off” in this chapter.

The numbers of the first five CDs in the CD-Changer are displayed next to keys **(13 and 14)**.

The following information will appear in the lower row of the display:

- a symbol indicating the presence of an audio CD or a navigation CD in the internal CD player;
- a symbol indicating the configuration (MIX, SCAN, RPT);
- a symbol indicating the sound source being played;
- a symbol indicating TA (traffic announcements) function status;
- a symbol indicating TMC function status.

Shifting to the CD-Changer functions menu (where fitted)

To shift from the main CD-Changer menu to the CD-Changer functions menu, press CD-C **(15)**: the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu **(fig. 46)**.

Press ESC **(9)** to return to the previous screen.

Selecting CD-Changer functions menu (where fitted)

In CD-Changer mode, press MEN **(10)** to display the CD-Changer functions menu **(fig. 48)**.

Press ESC **(9)** to return to the previous screen.

Selecting a CD

Proceed as follows to select a CD:

- 1) press CD-C **(15)** to display the main CD-Changer menu
- 2) press **(13 or 14)** relevant to the required CD.

Go to the next main menu page by pressing **(13 or 14)** relevant to CD6-CD10 or CD1-CD5 if the CD-Changer contains more than five CDs and the CD you require is not displayed.


WARNING The “lock” symbol  will be displayed next to CDC if there is no audio CD in the internal CD player. The CD-Changer will not offer this option.



fig. 48

Switching the track playing time/number display on and off

Proceed as follows to display the playing track number:

1 in CD-Changer (where fitted) mode, press MEN (**10**), the display will show the CD-Changer setup menu (**fig. 49**)

2 press (**13**) relevant to TIME. ON or OFF will be displayed.

Traffic information during CD playback

To receive or not traffic announcements (see "TA function" in "Radio" section) when using the CD-Changer (where fitted), briefly press the TA key (**4**). The TA symbol will either appear (on) or disappear (off) in the lower row.

SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS

Briefly press button >> on selector (**2**) to select next tracks. Press button >> on selector (**2**) again as soon as the last CD track is reached to select the first track on the CD.

To play a track again or to select the previous track, press briefly << on selector (**2**); as soon as the first CD track is reached, press again key << on selector (**2**) to select the last CD track.

SCANNING TRACKS

If you want to listen to a certain part of the track being played, you can scan the track: hold << or >> on selector (**2**) pressed during playback. The track will be scanned forwards or backwards.

WARNING The display will return to the main CD menu if no operation is carried out in the CD Changer (if installed), functions menu for 30 seconds.

MIX FUNCTION (random playback)

The MIX function can be used to play in random sequence the tracks on the current CD or on all the CDs in the CD-Changer (where fitted).

Proceed as follows to switch the function on:

1 in CD-Changer mode, press CD-C (**15**) the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu



fig. 49

2) press (14) relevant to MIX (fig. 50), the display will show MIX in the lower row

3) press MEN (10), the display will show the CD-Changer setup menu (fig. 51)

4) press the button (14) next to MIX to select the required option:

- CD to play the tracks on the current CD in random sequence;
- MAG to play the tracks on all the CDs in the CD-Changer in random sequence.

Press button (14) next to MIX again to switch the MIX function off.

The MIX function will end automatically if the SCAN or REPEAT functions are switched on.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.

SCAN FUNCTION (scanning all tracks on a CD)

The SCAN function plays all the tracks for 10 seconds starting from the current track. Proceed as follows to scan all the tracks on a CD:

1) in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD-Changer menu by pressing CD-C (15)

2) press (14) relevant to SCAN, the display will show SCAN (fig. 52) in the lower row

3) press MEN (10) to display the CD-Changer setup menu (fig. 51)

4) press the button (14) next to SCAN to select the required option:

- CD to scan all the tracks on the current CD;
- MAG to scan all the tracks on all CDs in the CD-Changer.

Press the button (14) next to SCAN again to switch the function off.

The SCAN function will end automatically if the MIX or REPEAT functions are switched on.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.



fig. 50



fig. 51

REPEAT FUNCTION (repeating the CD tracks)

The REPEAT function can be used to repeat the same track or the same CD.

Turning the function on

1) select the required track or CD with button << or >> on selector **(2)** during playback

2) from CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD functions menu by pressing CD-C **(15)**, the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu

3) press **(14)** relevant to REPEAT **(fig. 53)**, the display will show RPT on the lower row

4) to turn the REPEAT function on, press MEN **(10)** the display will show the CD-Changer setup menu **(fig. 51)**

5) press button **(13)** next to RPT to select the required option:

- TRK to repeat the current track only;
- CD to repeat the whole CD.

The track or CD will be repeated until the REPEAT function is switched off. The RPT message will appear in the lower row of the main CD menu.

Turning the function off

To turn the REPEAT function off, press ESC **(9)**.

The REPEAT function will end automatically when either the SCAN or MIX functions are switched on.

Press ESC **(9)** to return to the previous screen.

PROGRAM FUNCTION (programming the track sequence)

You can programme your favourite track sequence and skip the tracks you do not like.

Setting the required sequence

Proceed as follows to set the required sequence:

1) in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD-Changer functions menu by pressing CD-C **(15)**, the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu


2) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM **(fig. 54)** to display the CD programming menu.



fig. 52



fig. 53

If no track has been selected, CLR PRG and RUN cannot be selected (marked with symbol .

3) use key << or >> on selector **(2)** to choose the first track required

WARNING The tracks can only be programmed in sequence (e.g.: 1, 4, 7 etc. and not 3, 1, 4 etc.).

4) press **(13)** relevant to ADD

5) use key << or >> on selector **(2)** to select the next track required, then press **(13)** relevant to ADD.

Repeat the procedure for all the tracks to be added to the sequence. The programmed sequence will be stored even after the CD is removed from the player.

WARNING When re-inserting the CD in the system, the main CD menu will display an asterisk near the CD name

Deleting tracks from the sequence

Proceed as follows to delete the tracks from the sequence:

1) in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD-Changer functions menu by pressing CD-C **(15)**, the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu

2) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM **(fig. 54)** to display the CD programming menu **(fig. 55)**

3) select the track to be deleted using key << or >> on selector **(2)**

4) press **(13)** relevant to SKIP **(fig. 55)**.

Running/stopping the track sequence

After entering the required tracks in the sequence, press **(13)** relevant to RUN **(fig. 55)**.

The sequence will start from the last selected track. The message TPM will appear on the display.

Press button **(13)** next to RUN to stop a sequence without deleting it.

WARNING In TPM mode it is not possible to play another CD. Quit the TPM mode to play another CD.



fig. 54

Deleting a single track sequence

Proceed as follows to delete a programmed track sequence:

1 in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD-Changer functions menu by pressing CD-C (**15**), the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu

2 press (**13**) corresponding to PROGRAM (**fig. 54**) to display the CD-Changer programming menu (**fig. 55**)

3 press (**13**) relevant to RUN (**fig. 55**)

4 press (**14**) relevant to CLR PRG (**fig. 55**).

Clearing stored sequences and CD names

Proceed as follows to clear all the stored sequences and CD names:

1 in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), go to the CD-Changer functions menu by pressing CD-C (**15**), the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu

2 press (**13**) corresponding to PROGRAM (**fig. 54**) to display the CD-Changer programming menu

3 press button (**14**) next to CLR ALL

4 select YES with knob/button (**11**) at the confirmation message

5 press the knob/button(**11**) to confirm.

CD NAME FUNCTION (allocating a name to a CD)

This function shall be used to allocate names (max. 7 characters) to CDs.

In saloon versions, fitted with Blaupunkt CD-Changer for 10 discs, the CD name is kept in the memory even after ejecting the CD.

Proceed as follows:

1 press CD-C (**15**) to display the CD-Changer functions menu (**fig. 54**)

2 press (**13**) relevant to NAME (**fig. 56**) to display the CD Name menu

3 press (**13**) relevant to EDIT (**fig. 57**): to recall the speller (**fig. 58**)

Entering the name

Proceed as follows:

1 turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the first letter of the name to be allocated to the CD: the selected letter will be displayed on the right side of the screen (**fig. 56**)

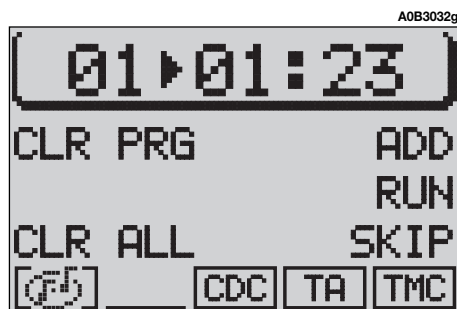


fig. 55

2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the letter will be entered in the upper line

3) proceed in the same way for the other letters

After completing the name, keep the knob/button (11) pressed for over 2 seconds or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (11): the CD name will be stored and the CD functions menu (fig. 54) will be displayed. The CD name will be displayed in the CD menu section.

Deleting a letter

After entering the name, to delete a letter, press ESC (9) or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (11).

Deleting the name of the selected CD

Proceed as follows:

1) recall the CD Name menu (fig. 57) as described previously

2) press (14) relevant to CLR NAME: the name will be deleted, also when recalling the speller again.

To quit the menu, select symbol ◀ or press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds.

Deleting the names of all the CDs

Proceed as follows:

1) recall the CD Name menu (fig. 57) as described previously

2) press (14) relevant to CLR ALL; the display will ask for confirmation, select YES with the knob/button (11)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, otherwise press ESC (9)



fig. 56

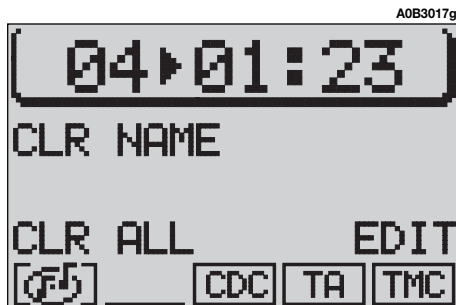


fig. 57



fig. 58

SATELLITE NAVIGATION

The Satellite Navigator will help you reach destinations rapidly and safely. After switching the navigation function on, voice messages will guide you to your destination. Driving advice, distances and estimated time required to reach the destination will be shown on the display.

The car's position is defined on the basis of the electronic speedometer signal, of a gyroscope and of the signals transmitted by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

The Navigator compares the data against the maps stored on the navigation CD-ROM and calculates both the position and the routes to reach the destination.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

Proceed as follows:

- 1) insert the CD ROM specific to the country you are travelling in
- 2) press NAV (12) to display the main navigation menu (fig. 59)
- 3) with CD-ROM inserted and main navigation menu active, the display will show the message in (fig. 60)

This message can also be displayed when turning the ignition key to **MAR** with CD-ROM inserted and main NAVIGATION menu active (fig. 59) when turning the system off.

WARNING The message stays on the display according to the CD-ROM scanning time (about 6 to 8 seconds). If the CD-ROM is inserted and main navigation menu is active, the message will stay on the display for the whole period. Turning the ignition key to **MAR**, will display the message for about 2 seconds. This shall be considered as regular.

4) enter the required destination (see next paragraph).

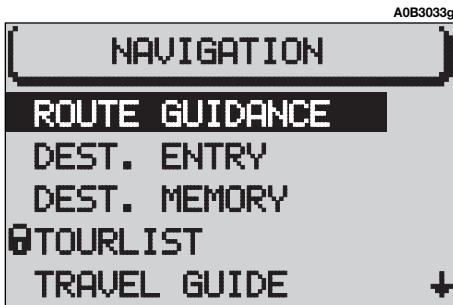


fig. 59



fig. 60



fig. 61

ENTERING THE DESTINATION

Possible destinations include:

- town;
 - town centre or district in a city;
 - street;
 - house number (if included in the navigation CD data);
 - intersection;
- special destinations can also be entered:
- motorway;
 - railway stations;
 - airports;
 - hospitals, etc.

Proceed as follows to enter a destination:

- 1**) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 61**) and then press the knob to confirm
- 2**) use the knob/button (**11**) to select CITY (**fig. 62**) and then press the knob to confirm. The editing menu for entering the destination will be displayed.

Entering the destination by the editing menu (Speller) (fig. 63)

The editing menu consists of five sections:

- 1** - list of symbols, letters, spaces, special characters and digits
- 2** - editing list with the first item matching letters in the editing field
- 3** - editing field (writing area)
- 4** - magnifying glass indicating the selected character.
- 5** - pilot symbols



fig. 62

fig. 63

Entering the destination name (fig. 63)

Proceed as follows to enter a name in the editing menu:

- 1) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field 3.

When a character is selected, for example letter **Q** 4, the first item in a list of destinations starting with the letter will automatically be displayed. Other letters in the destination name can be entered to speed up the search.

To display the list directly, move the cursor to symbol j and press the knob/button (11) or keep the knob/button (11) pressed for over two seconds.

When after entering the name the required item in the editing list appears in field 2, move the cursor to symbol **↓** and press the knob/button (11) or keep the knob/button (11) pressed for over two seconds. The display will show the list of destinations in alphabetical order.

Entering special characters

Proceed as follows if you have to form a destination name using special characters that are not present on the display (e.g.: Ä, Ö, Ü):

- 1) use knob/button (11) to place the cursor on symbol (up/down scrolling arrow)
- 2) press knob/button (11)

Each press on knob/button (11) will correspond to a new special character entry.

Deleting characters

Proceed as follows to delete a character entered by mistake:

- 1) position the cursor by turning the knob/button (11), on symbol **◀**
- 2) press the knob/button (11) or ESC (9).

Selecting a destination from the list

Proceed as follows to select a destination from the list:

- 1) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required destination
- 2) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (11).

Scrolling the lists (fig. 61)

Since only five lines can be displayed, some lists are split into several screens. In this case, an arrow ↓ will appear on the bottom right-hand side to indicate that the list continues.

To scroll the list, turn the knob/button (11) in the required direction.

A scrolling arrow ↓ or ↑ will appear on the penultimate line (from the bottom or from the top). Turn the knob/button (11) to display the other lines in the list.



Scrolling lists page by page

The longer lists can be scrolled page by page to seek your destination faster.

Proceed as follows:

1) turn knob/button (11) to position the cursor on the arrow in lower right-hand side of the display

2) press knob/button (11) to confirm the page change. In this way, the following screen will be shown and the cursor will remain on the arrow

3) once you have reached the required page, select as required and confirm by pressing the knob/button (11).



Entering the destination "CITY"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (11) to select DEST. ENTRY (fig. 61)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11)

3) use the knob/button (11) to select CITY (fig. 65)

4) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The destination entry menu will be opened

5) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The selected character is displayed in the editing field (**3-fig. 63**)

7) repeat the procedure for the other letters in the name

8) when entering the name, the list of destinations matching the entered letters will appear in the editing list (**2-fig. 63**).

9) move the cursor to symbol **↵** and press the knob/button (**11**) or hold the knob/button (**11**) pressed for longer than two seconds. The alphabetical list of destinations will appear

10) turn the knob/button (**11**) to find the required destination name in the editing list

11) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to not confirm the destination and return to the editing menu (Speller) (**fig. 63**).

After selecting the destination, the sound/navigation system offers the following options: STREET, CENTRE, DEST. SURROUND

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

“STREET” The destination street can be entered. This option depends on the size of the town and data stored on the navigation CD.

Confirm the street. The entering procedure will continue with the following options:

– CONTINUE: select this item to continue;

– INTERSECTION: select this item to define an intersection with the previously selected street as a destination. In this case, an alphabetical list where to select the required intersection will be displayed;

– HOUSE NUMBER: select this item to define a house number on the previously selected street as a destination.

“CENTRE” The town centre or district (for big cities) can be entered as a destination.

“P.O.I.” Special destinations in the surroundings of the town - e.g.: motorways, railway stations, shopping centres, etc. - can be directly selected

The system will automatically return to the main navigation menu after the entry.

Select ROUTE GUIDANCE (fig. 59) and confirm by pressing the knob/button (11).

The system will calculate the route in a few seconds and start providing visual instructions (drawings) and voice messages to guide you to your destination.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination “STREET”

You can specify a street as a destination in the previously selected town as follows:

1) select DEST. ENTRY (fig. 61) in the main navigation menu with the knob/button (11)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11)

3) use the knob/button (11) to select STREET (fig. 66). The editing menu for entering the street (fig. 67) will be displayed

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the menu for entering the destination will be displayed

5) move the cursor to the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

6) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will appear in the editing field

7) repeat the procedure for the other letters in the name

8) when entering the name, the list of destinations matching the entered letters will appear in the editing list



fig. 66



fig. 67

9) move the cursor to symbol **↓** and press the knob/button (**11**) or hold the knob/button (**11**) pressed for longer than two seconds. The alphabetical list of destinations will appear on the display

10) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required street name in the editing list

11) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

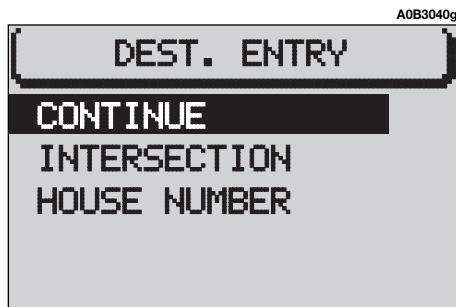


fig. 68

Entering the destination "HOUSE NUMBER"

Proceed as follows to reach a house number:

1) enter the STREET as described previously

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to select HOUSE NUMBER (**fig. 68**), the display will show the available street number list (**fig. 69**)

3) position the cursor on the required number by turning the knob/button (**11**)

4) confirm the number by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected number will be highlighted on the display

5) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

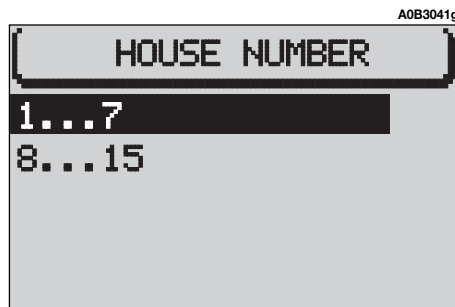


fig. 69

Entering the destination "INTERSECTION"

Proceed as follows to reach an intersection:

1) enter the street name as described above

2) use the knob/button (11) to select INTERSECTION (fig. 68), the display will show the intersection list (fig. 70).


WARNING If the list includes more than 5 names, see paragraph "Entering the destination name" in this section to speed up the search.



fig. 70

3) move the cursor to the required intersection by turning the knob/button (11)

4) confirm the intersection by pressing the knob/button (11).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol  will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination "TOWN CENTRE"

Proceed as follows to reach town centre:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (11) to select DEST. ENTRY (fig. 71).

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (11) to select CENTRE (fig. 72), the display will show the editing menu for entering the town (see "Entering the destination "City" in this section).

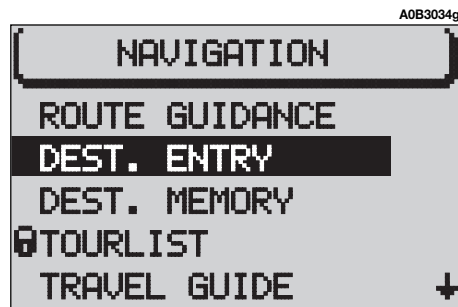



fig. 71

4) enter the town and confirm with the knob/button (11). The list of town centres and districts will appear on the display

5) position the cursor on the required town centre by turning the knob/button (11)

6) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected town centre will be highlighted on the display

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (11).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol  will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 72

ENTERING SPECIAL DESTINATIONS

These are destinations contained in directories in alphabetical order and include motorways, railway stations, shopping centres, service stations, parking areas, etc.

Special destinations can be sought in four different ways:

– IN DEST. AREA: displaying the special destinations related to the previous selection;

– SUPRAREG. DESTS (supraregional destinations): displaying special destinations in other locations with respect to the selected destination. The directories only refer to the country on the CD;

– DEST. SURROUND (destination surroundings): displaying special destinations (example: sports grounds, etc.) in the area surrounding the previously selected destination;

– POS. SURROUND. (position surroundings): displaying special destinations near the current position of the car.

WARNING You will need to have entered a destination: CITY or STREET, CENTRE or INTERSECTION to have access to the directories.

Entering the destination "IN DEST AREA"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 73**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 74**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

4) select IN DEST. AREA (**fig. 75**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

A0B3034g

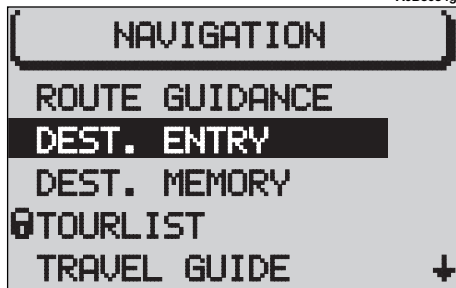


fig. 73

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

A0B3045g



fig. 74

Entering the destination "SUPRAREG. DESTS"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 73**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 74**), the P.O.I. (special destinations) menu (**fig. 75**) will be displayed

A0B3046g

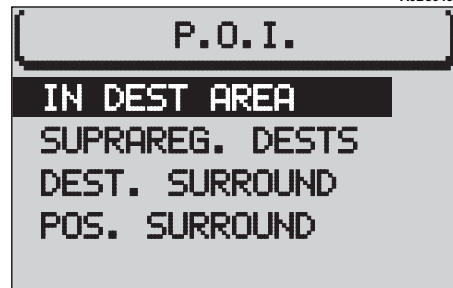


fig. 75

4) select SUPRAREG. DESTS (**fig. 76**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

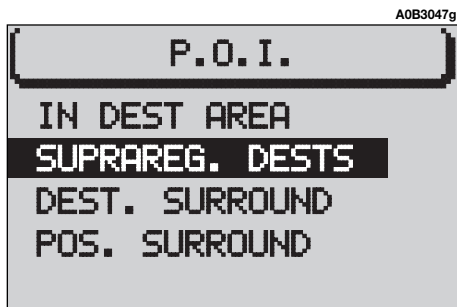


fig. 76

Entering the destination “DEST. SURROUND”

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 73**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 74**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

4) select DEST. SURROUND (**fig. 77**) turning the knob/button(**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination “POS. SURROUND”

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 73**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 74**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

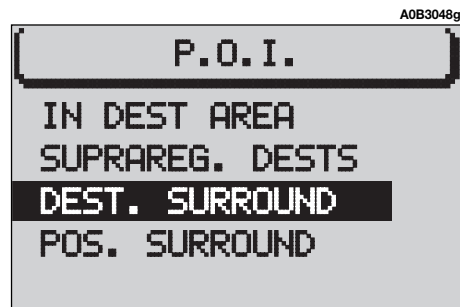


fig. 77

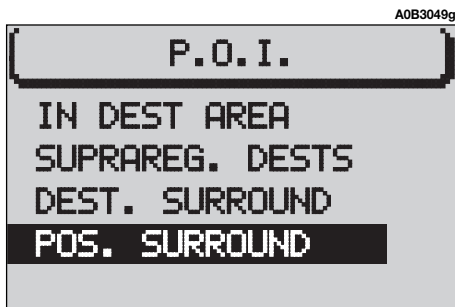
4) select POS. SURROUND (fig. 78) turning the knob/button (11)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (11) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



146 fig. 78

USING STORED DESTINATIONS

You can use previously stored destinations. Three memory categories are offered:

– LAST 10: the last ten navigation destinations. The destinations are automatically entered in the LAST 10 memory when the LAST 10 option in the DSC NAVI navigation menu is on. See “Destination memory” in the “Active navigation” section;

POSITION MARK: car position is stored and can be selected as a destination;

– ALPH. SORTING (alphabetical sorting): the destinations are stored in alphabetical order;

– MANUAL SORTING: the destinations are shown in the previously set order.

Proceed as follows to use a previously stored destination:

1) press the NAV button (12) to display the main navigation menu

2) use the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 79)



fig. 79

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm. The DEST. MEMORY menu (fig. 80) will be displayed

4) position the cursor on the required destination by turning the knob/button (11)

5) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 80

STORING THE CURRENT POSITION

Proceed as follows to store the current position:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 79)

2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm. The menu for entering the destination will be displayed

3) use the knob/button (11) to select POSITION MARK (fig. 81)

4) confirm the destination with the knob/button (11).

WARNING This procedure can only be carried out with a navigation CD inserted in the drive.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 81

ACTIVE NAVIGATION

ROUTE GUIDANCE

Active navigation requires an entered destination (see "Entering the destination" in section "Satellite navigation") and route options settings.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press NAV (12), to display the main navigation menu (fig. 82)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE GUIDANCE
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to display the route guidance menu (fig. 83).

The system will start computing the route. The calculation can take several seconds according to the distance. During this time CALC or RECALC are shown on the display (if a previous route guidance is on). The distance to be travelled to reach the destination will be shown under the time.

The upper row will display the name of the street you are crossing or the name of the street where you have to turn.

WARNING If you leave the indicated route, the Navigator will display the message OFF ROAD or OFF MAP (in the case of insufficient positioning data).

The route guidance instructions are shown on the display.

Instructions can be displayed in 2-D (fig. 83) or 3-D (fig. 84).

To select the required option, press the knob/button (11) for approximately three seconds until the instruction changes.

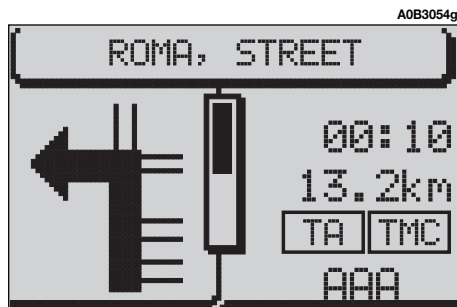
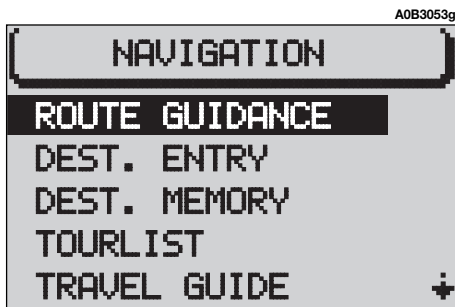


fig. 82

fig. 83

fig. 84

The distance before the turning point and the time required to reach the destination or the estimated arrival time are shown on the display (see “Switching route time information on and off” in this section).

Furthermore, the traffic announcement status (TA function) and the TMC status (Traffic Message Channel) are shown on the display.

The active audio source is shown on the display along with the name or the frequency of the station tuned to (see paragraph “RDS function” in section “Radio”).

When the CD-Changer (where fitted) is on, the number of the current CD, the track name or number and the track playing time are shown on the display.

“PHONE” will appear on the display when the telephone Mute function is on.

During NO MAP navigation it will be possible to play an audio CD using the internal player. In this case the display will show the number of the track being played and the playback time.

STOPPING NAVIGATION

Proceed as follows to stop navigation:

1) press ESC (**9**) or enter a new destination or recall the function for identifying the car position (see paragraph “Defining the car position” in this section). When pressing ESC (**9**), a navigation interruption confirmation message will appear on the display (**fig. 85**).

2) select YES by turning the knob/button (**11**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection.

WARNING The navigation data will be stored for 30 minutes if the system is switched off during active navigation. The navigation will start again during this period. After 30 minutes you will need to restore the route guidance data.

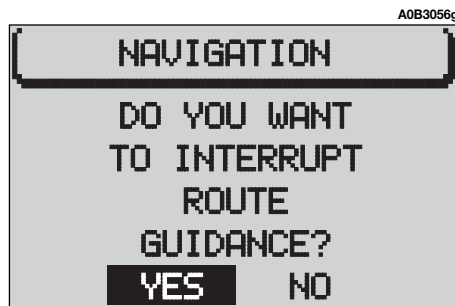


fig. 85

CHANGING THE AUDIO SOURCE

You can change the audio source during active navigation at any moment by pressing TUN (17) or CD-C (15). The display will show the main radio or CD or CD-Changer (where fitted) menus.

Select another radio station or another track.

WARNING During active navigation the internal CD player cannot be used.

Press NAV (12) to return to active navigation.

TUNING THE RADIO

You can tune the radio directly during active navigation by pressing keys (13 or 14).

WARNING To tune radio stations using multifunction keys (13 or 14), store the radio stations previously (see paragraph "Storing stations" in "radio" section).

NO MAP NAVIGATION

NO MAP navigation is carried out when the navigation CD is removed after entering the destination and starting navigation. The internal CD player can be used during NO MAP navigation for sound playback.

The message NO MAP will appear when the NO MAP function is on along with the straight distance to the destination.

WARNING It may take the Navigator several minutes to correctly restore the car positioning data when the navigation CD is reinserted. During this time the message OFF ROAD or OFF MAP will appear on the display (the latter for insufficient positioning data). During this time, errors in detecting the car position may occur.

DYNAMIC TRAVEL GUIDE (where fitted)

When the “Dynamic travel guide” function is on, the Navigator analyses and processes the traffic messages to calculate the route.

Traffic messages are broadcast by RDS stations with TMC service (Traffic Message Channel).

Proceed as follows to activate the “Dynamic travel guide” function:

1) when starting navigation, press MEN (10), to display the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE OPTION (fig. 86).

3) press the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE (fig. 87)

4) press repeatedly the knob/button (11) until the display shows DYN.

5) use the knob/button (11) to select CONTINUE

6) press the knob/button (11).

The system will go back to “Route guidance” (see paragraph “Route guidance” in this section) and settings will stay unvaried until another setting is performed.

WARNING To activate the “Dynamic travel guide” during the “Route guidance”, the Navigator shall tune to a TMC station. Should there be no TMC station stored on the FMC waveband, TMC station scanning will be started. Scanning may take several minutes since it is performed on the whole frequency range. During this period the radio is off.



fig. 86

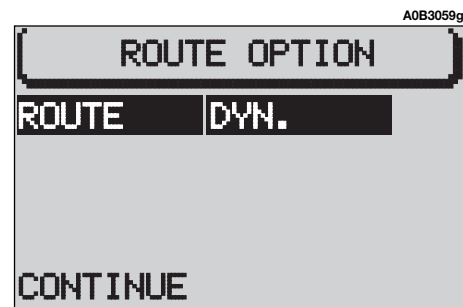


fig. 87

TOURIST GUIDE INFORMATION (where fitted)

Tourist information on the destinations can be recalled when using a navigation CD.

Information is contained in directories on the following topics: accommodation, restaurants, tourist information, amusements, etc. . .

The guide name will appear in the main navigation menu if there is only one guide.



Proceed as follows:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the tourist guide in the main navigation menu (**fig. 88**)

If more than one guides are available on the CD, the display will show the guide list. Proceed as follows:

1) select the required tourist guide by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

3) enter the name of the town for which information is required with editing menu under DEST. ENTRY (see paragraph "Entering the destination" in section "Satellite navigation").

4) open the directory containing the required info

To start active navigation to a stored destination, keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over 2 seconds. The display will show another menu; use the knob/button (**11**) to select ROUTE GUIDANCE.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

ROUTE LIST

The display can show the route list TOURLIST calculated by the Navigator.

Proceed as follows to display this information:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TOURLIST (**fig. 89**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the list of available routes (**fig. 90**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 89

DESTINATION MEMORY

Destinations (current or previous) can be stored and customised with a short name.

Proceed as follows to store the required destination in the destination memory:

1) press NAV (**12**) to display the main navigation menu (**fig. 89**)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 91**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu (**fig. 92**)



fig. 90

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SAVE DEST. (**fig. 92**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The complete name of the entered destination is suggested as a name.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 91

Entering and editing destination names

Proceed as follows to edit or enter a name in the destination memory:

1) press NAV (12) to display the main navigation menu (fig. 88)

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 91)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu (fig. 92)

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select EDIT MEMORY (fig. 93)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The editing menu will appear on the display

6) move the cursor to the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

7) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field. Repeat the last two operations to complete the name

8) press the knob/button (11) for over two seconds to confirm or select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

STORING STORED DESTINATIONS

You can sort the destination memory list. This list can be recalled when entering the destination.

Proceed as follows for storing:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 94)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu



4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SORT DEST. (**fig. 95**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

6) select the destination to be moved by turning the knob/button (**11**)

7) confirm the selected destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

8) move the destination to the new position by turning the knob/button (**11**)

9) confirm the new position by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 95

DELETING STORED DATA

The last ten stored destinations, single destinations or all destination in memory can be deleted.

WARNING Navigation CD must be inserted in the drive to clear the memory.

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 94**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu (**fig. 95**)

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CLEAR DEST. (**fig. 96**), then press the knob to confirm, the display will show the following options:

– LAST 10: delete the last ten destinations;

– SINGLE DEST.: delete a single destination;

– ALL DESTS.: delete all destinations.

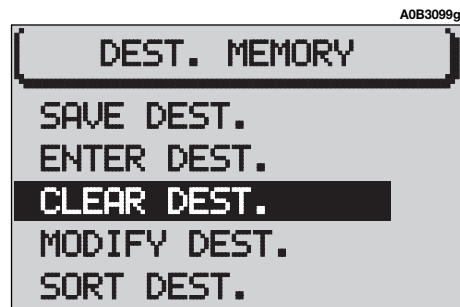


fig. 96

5) select the required option (LAST 10, SINGLE DEST. and ALL DESTS.) and confirm by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The memory will be automatically cleared for the first two options. Continue as follows for the third option:

6) select the destination to be deleted by turning the knob/button (**11**)

7) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

8) select CLEAR (to delete) or NO (not to delete) with the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

ENTERING AND EDITING DESTINATION SHORT NAMES

Proceed as follows to edit or enter a short name in the destination memory:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display

2) select DEST. MEMORY by turning the knob/button (**11**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu.

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select MODIFY DEST. (**fig. 97**)

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the list of stored destinations in alphabetical order

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the destination name to be changed, the display will show the editing menu (speller)

7) move the cursor to the required character by turning the knob/button (**11**)

8) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field

9) repeat the above procedure to complete the name

10) move the cursor to symbol **↵** and press the knob/button (**11**) or press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.



fig. 97

GPS STATUS AND POSITION INFORMATION


Proceed as follows to display the number of GPS satellites which can be received and the car position:

- 1) Press the NAV button (12). The main navigation menu will appear on the display
- 2) select GPS STATUS by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).


Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

AVOIDING TAILBACKS DURING NAVIGATION

When active navigation is on, the system can detour tailbacks or road interruptions.

WARNING Only the options for which data are available on the navigation CD are offered. The “lock” symbol  will be displayed next to the unavailable options.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press  (7), the display will show the SETTINGS menu (fig. 98)
- 2) use the knob/button (11) to move the cursor to TRAFFIC AHEAD; the display will show the TRAFFIC AHEAD menu and the cursor will move to TO (fig. 99)

- 3) press the knob/button (11)

- 4) move the cursor to FROM with the knob/button (11)

- 5) use the knob/button (11) to specify the distance with respect to your position to start detour

- 6) move the cursor to TO with the knob/button (11)

- 7) use the knob/button (11) to specify the distance with respect to your position to end detour

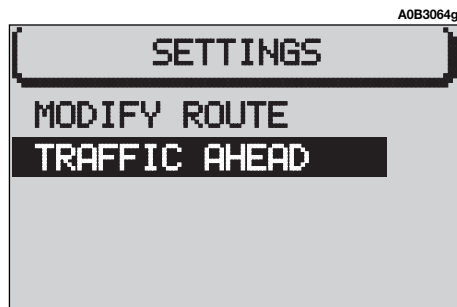



fig. 98



fig. 99

8) select OK with the knob/button (**11**). Press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The route guidance menu will appear on the display and the new route is recalculated. The message NEW CALC. will appear on the display

Proceed as follows to switch the function off:

1) press  (**7**), the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 98**)

2) move the cursor to TRAFFIC AHEAD with the knob/button (**11**). The TRAFFIC AHEAD menu will appear and the cursor will move to TO

3) press the knob/button


4) select CLEAR by the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The route will be recalculated.

LOCKING A ROUTE SECTION WITHIN A ROUTE LIST

You can lock single road sections along the calculated route. This function is very useful when you receive information on heavy traffic, works in progress, etc. along your calculated route.


Proceed as follows:

1) press  (**7**); the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 98**)

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to move the cursor to MODIFY ROUTE (**fig. 100**): the display will show the route list where to lock the required route section

WARNING Long routes in which single short sections cannot be locked are marked with symbol “+”. To display short route sections, select items marked with symbol “+” and hold the knob/button pressed for longer than two seconds.

Short route sections which are not divided are marked with symbol “-”.

Route sections that cannot be locked (since an alternative route cannot be selected), are marked with symbol .

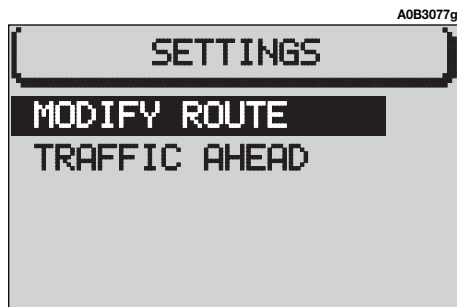


fig. 100

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select the first route section you want to delete from the list (it is better to select a long route)


4) press the knob/button (**11**): a ring will be displayed in front of the selected route

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) until selecting the last route to delete from the list (it is better to select a long route)

6) press the knob/button (**11**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display and a new route is calculated. The message NEW CALC will appear on the display.

Deleting/changing route lock

Proceed as follows:

1) press  (**7**); the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 98**)

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to move the cursor to MODIFY ROUTE (**fig. 100**): the display will show the clear or change options:

– to **delete** a route section select **CLEAR**, the display will show the main navigation menu and new route will be calculated: the display shows NEW CALC.

– to **change** a route section select **CHANGE** and repeat the operations listed in points **3)**, **4)**, **5)** and **6)** concerning route lock

CUSTOMISING THE ROUTE

Routes can be customised at any moment, even during navigation by entering the following parameters:

– **ROUTE**: you can choose between the fastest or shortest route or select the “Dynamic travel guide” (DYN.) with TMC (see paragraph “Dynamic travel guide” in this section). When this function is on, all the other options (MOTORWAY, FERRY and TOOL) are not displayed. The Navigator tunes automatically to a TMC station and calculates the fastest/shortest route on the basis of the traffic messages;

– **MOTORWAY**: during navigation, you can choose whether to use motorways;

– **FERRY**: you can choose whether to use ferries;

– **TOOL**: you can exclude toll roads from the route.

WARNING For instance, setting MOTORWAY LESS (fig. 102), you avoid motorways but you have to cover long route sections, the system will therefore programme motorways in the calculated route. The same stands valid for FERRY and for TOOL roads. Proceed as follows to select the route options:

- 1) press the MEN button (10) to open the navigation setup menu
- 2) select ROUTE OPTION (fig. 101) by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the ROUTE OPTION menu (fig. 102)

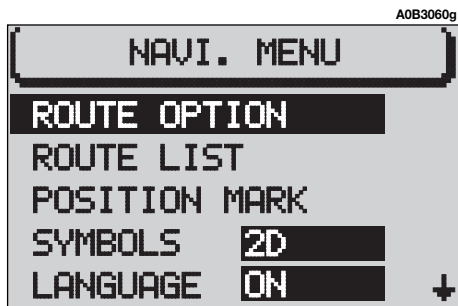


fig. 101

4) use the knob/button (11) to move the cursor to the required option

5) press the knob/button (11) to change the setting.

Proceed as follows to quit the route option menu:

- 1) press ESC (9) to go back to the navigation setup menu or use the knob/button (11) to move the cursor to CONTINUE (fig. 102)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm. If "Route guide" is not active the display will show the main navigation menu.

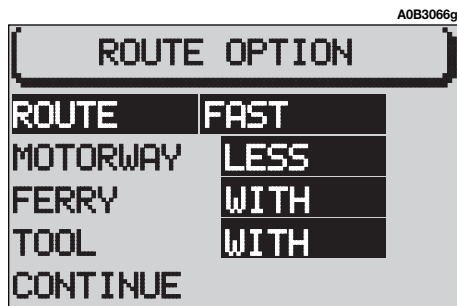


fig. 102

WARNING Navigator will automatically calculate a new route when the settings are changed during active navigation. The route options will be active until they are changed again.

DEFINING THE CAR POSITION

This function can be used to display the current position of the car (example: the name of the street you are driving along) and the north-up indication. Route guidance will be interrupted when the function is on.

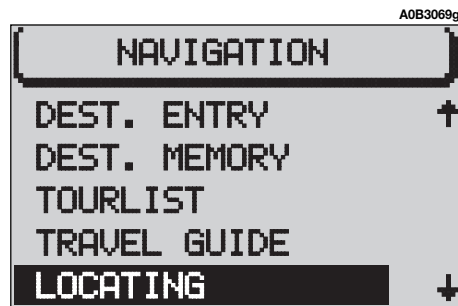


fig. 103

Proceed as follows to define the current position:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select LOCATING (fig. 103)

3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to end the function and return to the main navigation menu.

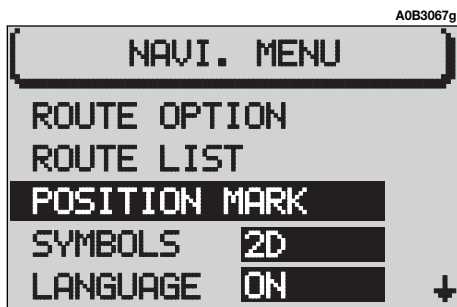


fig. 104

Storing current position

Proceed as follows to store the current position:

1) press the MEN button (10) to display the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select POSITION MARK (fig. 104)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, then select NAME to store it. The display will show the editing menu (fig. 105) to enter the position name

4) move the cursor to the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

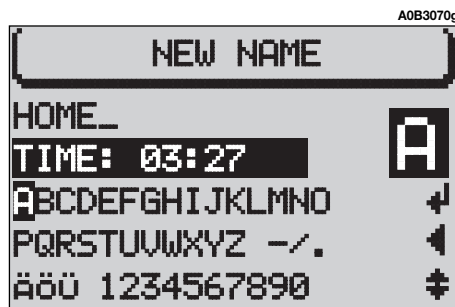


fig. 105

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will appear in the editing field

6) press the knob/button (11) for over two seconds to confirm the short name, then repeat the same operations for the other characters

7) press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds to confirm or select symbol ↵ and confirm.

WARNING This procedure can only be carried out with navigation CD inserted in the drive.

The entered name will automatically be transferred to the destination memory.

Proceed as follows if you do not want to assign a short name to the current position:

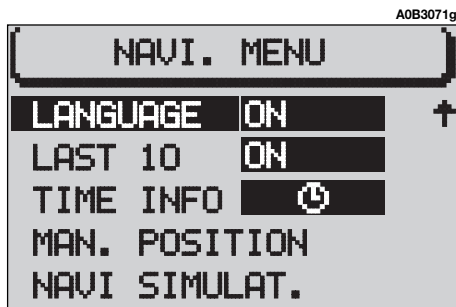
1) select CONTINUE with the knob/button (11) instead of NAME (as described above)

2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm and go back to the main menu without storing names.

RECEIVING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS DURING NAVIGATION

You can listen to traffic announcements during navigation. This option can be switched on and off regardless of the sound source.

To switch this function on/off press TA (4).



162 fig. 106

SWITCHING VOICE MESSAGES ON AND OFF

Route guide consists of voice messages. The voice messages provide information on the distances to be travelled before turning.

The voice messages can be switched on and off:

- 1) press the MEN button (10) to display the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select LANGUAGE (fig. 106)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to display ON (voice messages on) or OFF (voice messages off). The default setting is ON.

SWITCHING THE LAST 10 DESTINATION MEMORY ON AND OFF

The last ten destinations can be stored. With this function, you can automatically store the last ten destinations.

Proceed as follows to switch the last ten destination memory on and off:

- 1) press the MEN button (10) to display the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select LAST 10 (fig. 107)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to display ON or OFF. The default setting is ON.
- 4) press ESC (9) to quit the navigation menu

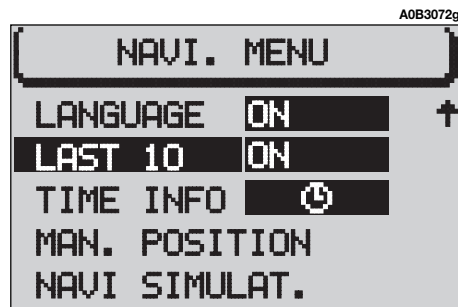


fig. 107

SWITCHING ROUTE TIME INFORMATION ON AND OFF

This function enables to select the time required to reach the destination and the estimated and exact time of arrival.

Proceed as follows to switch the route time information on and off:

- 1) press MEN (10), the display will show the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select TIME INFO (fig. 108)

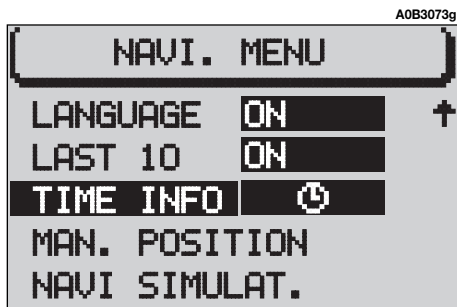


fig. 108

3) press the knob/button (11) to select ⌚ (time to reach destination), ⌚ (exact time of arrival) or ⌚ (estimated time of arrival).

Press ESC to switch the function off and return to the main navigation menu (9)

MANUAL POSITION INDICATION

The Navigator enables to indicate the current car position manually, when the GPS signal cannot be received.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press the MEN button (10) to open the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select MAN. POSITION (fig. 109)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the editing menu. Fill in the required data in the following order: town, street, intersection (see "Entering the destination name" in section "Satellite navigation")

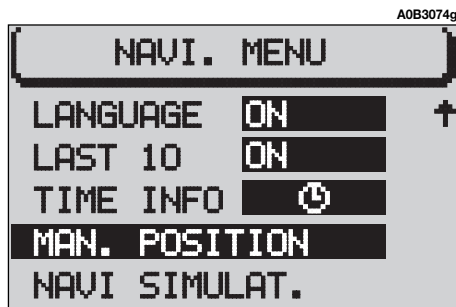


fig. 109

4) after completing the above operation, press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds to confirm or select symbol (↵) and confirm: the display will show the main navigation menu.

WARNING Certain road intersections (e.g. straight road intersection with loop road) are not suitable for indicating the car position.

NAVIGATION SIMULATION

The Navigator can simulate a trip. The system simulates navigation by providing realistic visual instructions, voice messages and acoustic signals.

Proceed as follows to start a simulation:

1) press the MEN button (10) in the main navigation menu or in the route guidance menu to display the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select NAVI SIMULAT. (fig. 110)

3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The simulation will be started

4) use the knob/button (11) to select ROUND TRIP or ONE WAY on the main navigation menu

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm; the display will show the navigation menu

6) enter destination (see “Entering the destination” in section “Satellite navigation”); the display will show route guidance simulation with the message “DEMO” (fig. 111)

WARNING Simulation will automatically end when the set destination is reached or when a real navigation is started.

WARNING If GPS positioning is not possible, enter position by hand. During simulation, NO MAP navigation is not possible.

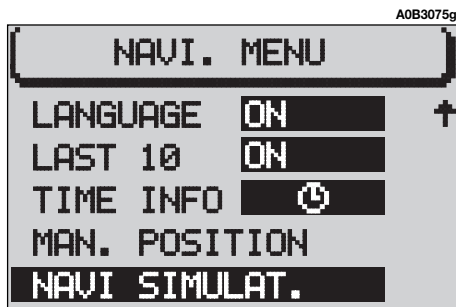


fig. 110

fig. 111

BASIC SETTINGS

The SETTINGS menu allows to adjust the navigator settings to your needs. Furthermore, with the settings menu of the different audio sources it is possible to set the special audio and navigation functions.

OPENING THE SETTINGS MENU

The SETTINGS menu can be opened from the main menus of the various functions. Use the following buttons to open the main menus:

- press TUN (17) for main radio menu;
- press CD-C (15) to open the CD or CD changer (where fitted) function main menu;
- press NAV (12) for the main navigation menu.

When the display shows the main menu of one of the audio sources or a function menu is displayed, press twice MEN (10): the display will show the SETTINGS menu (fig. 112)

If audio source SETTINGS menu or NAVIGATION menu is displayed, press MEN (10), the display will show the SETTINGS menu.

The display will show a list of options in the SETTINGS menu (fig. 112).

Proceed as follows to set and select options in the list:

1) turn the knob/button (11) to move the cursor to the required option

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY

In the SETTINGS menu, you can turn on and off the automatic switchover to night-time display and adjust brightness and contrast (separately for day and night). Furthermore, you can adjust the angle of vision for the route instructions on the display.



fig. 112

Automatic night-time display switchover

Proceed as follows to switch the automatic night-time display switchover function off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select DISPLAY by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select DAY/NIGHT (**fig. 113**)
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to select ON or OFF. The default setting is ON.

Repeat the procedure to switch the automatic switchover function back on.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

Angle of vision

Proceed as follows to adjust the angle of vision of the display:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select DISPLAY by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select ANGLE (**fig. 113**)

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

6) turn the knob/button (11) to adjust the angle of vision

7) press the knob/button (11) to confirm last setting.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

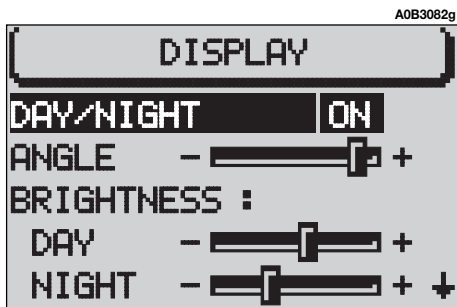


fig. 113

Adjusting display brightness

To adjust display brightness (for night or day), proceed as follows:

- 1) Open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) Select DISPLAY by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) Press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) Turn the knob/button (**11**) to select BRIGHTNESS (**fig. 113**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DAY or NIGHT to adjust brightness
- 7) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm last setting.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Adjusting the fade effect

Proceed as follows:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DISPLAY (**fig. 112**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SPECIAL EFF (**fig. 114**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to select one of the three different fade effects. Default setting is 0 (no fade).

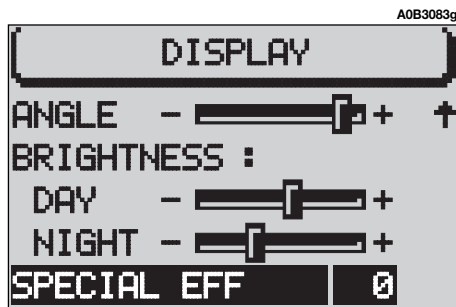


fig. 114

ADJUSTING POWER-ON, TA ANNOUNCEMENT, MESSAGE AND GALA VOLUME

The power-on volume (POWER-ON), the minimum traffic announcement volume (TA-MIN), the minimum volume for voice messages and warnings (NAV-MIN) and the variable volume according to speed function (GALA) can be adjusted in the SETTINGS menu.

WARNING The system volume overrides the SETTINGS volume when it is higher than the minimum set volume.

WARNING The minimum volume is a form of limitation. If the volume was lower than the minimum set volume when the system was switched off this will override the SETTINGS volume; If on the other hand the volume was higher, the minimum volume will be valid.



WARNING

Too high a volume when driving can put the driver's life at risk and that of other people. Therefore the volume should always be adjusted in such a way that it is always possible to hear the noises of the surrounding environment (e.g. horns, ambulance, police sirens, etc.).

Proceed as follows to adjust the volume:

- 1) Open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) Turn the knob/button (11) to select VOLUME (**fig. 115**)
- 3) Press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 4) Turn the knob/button (11) to select one of the following options (**fig. 116**):
 - POWER-ON (power-on volume);
 - TA-MIN (minimum TA traffic announcement volume);

- NAVI-MIN (minimum navigation instructions volume);
 - GALA (variable volume according to speed)
 - PHONE (min. phone volume)
- 5) Press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
 - 6) Adjust the setting by turning the knob/button (11)
 - 7) Press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

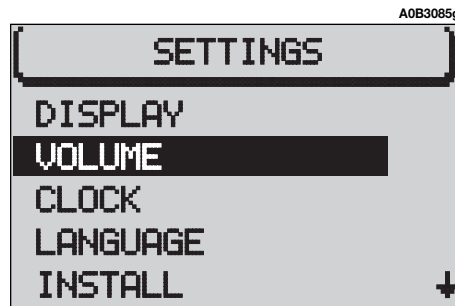


fig. 115

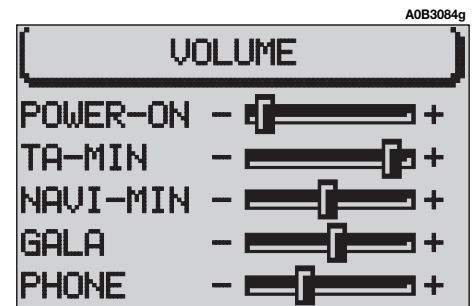


fig. 116

SETTING THE CLOCK

The SETTINGS menu can be used to switch the summer time on and off, adjust the clock format (12 hours/24 hours) and set the time zone referred to Central European Time (MEZ). These settings are required by the sound/navigation system to calculate the discrepancy between system time and GPS transmitted time and, consequently, calculate the actual navigation time.

Selecting the time format

Proceed as follows to select the time format (12 or 24 hour clock):

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 4) select SETTINGS menu by turning the knob/button (11)
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select TIME FORMAT (**fig. 117**)
- 6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

7) press repeatedly the knob/button (11) to select 12H or 24H

8) press the knob/button (11) for longer than two seconds to confirm the selection.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

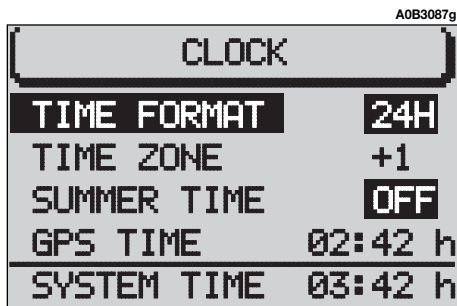


fig. 117

Selecting the time zone

Proceed as follows to change the time zone:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) select SETTINGS menu by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TIME ZONE (**fig. 117**)
- 6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to set the time zone (example: -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, etc.)
- 8) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Switching summer time on and off

The system will automatically switch to summer time when the function is on. Proceed as follows to switch summer time on and off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) select SETTINGS menu by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SUMMER TIME (**fig. 117**)
- 6) press the knob/button (**11**) to display summer time ON or OFF.

The system time will be automatically adjusted. The message ON or OFF according to the selection will appear on the display.

Switching the main time on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the main time function on and off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select MAIN CLOCK (**fig. 118**)
- 5) press repeatedly the knob/button (**11**) to select ON or OFF

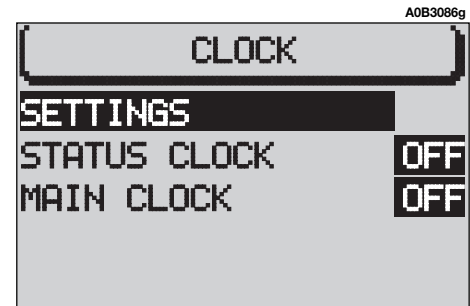


fig. 118

Switching the time status on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the time status function on and off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) select STATUS CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to select ON or OFF

Setting the exact time manually

Proceed as follows to set manually the exact time (e.g.: when no GPS satellite signal is received):

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select CLOCK by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection
- 4) select SETTINGS menu by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5) select SYSTEM TIME by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection: hours are displayed with reverse writing
- 7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to set hours
- 8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection: minutes are displayed with reverse writing
- 9) turn the knob/button (**11**) to set minutes
- 10) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection

SELECTING THE LANGUAGE

You can select the language for messages on the display. "Metric" (distances in kilometres) and "imperial" (distances in miles) versions are offered for English

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 112**) as described previously
- 2) select LANGUAGE by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection. A list of available languages will be displayed
- 4) select the required language by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

A new language will be loaded. At the end of the loading operation with a CD inserted in the drive a confirmation voice message will be heard.


The device will return to the SETTINGS menu.

WARNING For certain countries (e.g. Denmark, Sweden and Portugal), the voice messages related to Navigation are in English whereas displayed messages are written in the language of each country.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

The following system calibrations can be made in the INSTALL menu:

- SYSTEM TEST
- CALIBRATION
- GPS STATUS

WARNING The system cannot be calibrated when the lock symbol  appears next to INSTALL.



The system can be calibrated at Alfa Romeo Authorised Services only.

SYSTEM TEST

The system test checks the GPS aerial, the correct transmission of reversing signal and correct connection to other systems.

1) open the SETTINGS menu as described previously (see paragraph "Opening the settings menu" in this section)

2) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select INSTALL (**fig. 119**)

3) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the selection



fig. 119

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select SYSTEM TEST (fig. 120)

5) select SENSOR TEST, or INTERNAL TEST or CALIBRAT. DATA: the display will show the relevant test results.

The installation menu will appear automatically when the test is done.

Prss ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 120

Calibration after changing the tyres

You may need to re-calibrate the Navigator after changing the tyres.

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press MEN (10) to display the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 119)

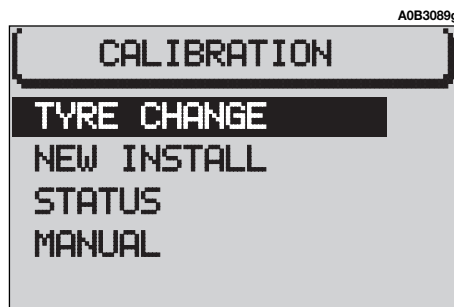


fig. 121

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

5) turn the knob/button (11) to select CALIBRATION

6) select TYRE CHANGE (fig. 121) and confirm

7) follow the instructions on the screen.

CALIBRATION

Manual system test

The system can be calibrated manually. You will need to drive for 100 metres at a speed not exceeding 30 km/h. The distance must be accurate.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu
- 2) press MEN (10) to display the SETTINGS menu
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 119)
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select CALIBRATION (fig. 120)
- 6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 7) turn the knob/button (11) to select MANUAL
- 8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

The editing menu will be displayed. Enter the distance (fig. 122)

- 1) select the first digit of the distance by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the digit
- 3) continue entering the other digits
- 4) confirm the distance by moving to symbol ↵ turning the knob/button (11)
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

At this point the instructions to drive the distance will appear on the display. Proceed as follows to start the calibration:"

- 1) select START by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 3) drive for 100 metres as shown above
- 4) after 100 metres, stop and select OK or STOP and confirm with the knob/button (11). Press ESC (9) to cancel.

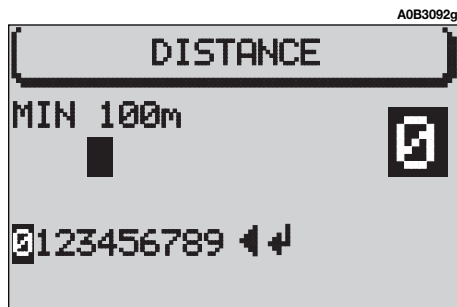


fig. 122

GPS STATUS

Proceed as follows to display the number of GPS satellites which can be received and the car position:

- 1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu
- 2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 123)



fig. 123

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the INSTALLATION menu (fig. 124)

5) select GPS STATUS by turning the knob/button (11)

6) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 124

“NEW INSTALL” calibration

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 123)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

5) select CALIBRATION and confirm

6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

7) turn the knob/button (11) to select NEW INSTALL (fig. 125)

8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

9) follow the instructions on the screen and then press the knob/button (11)

Proceed as follows to stop calibration:

1) select CANCEL with the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection: the previous INSTALLATION point is recalled

The system will run a test for which you will need to drive for 8 to 15 km in an area with good GPS reception.

Before starting calibration, delete old calibration values and confirm.

WARNING During the first 25% of the system calibration procedure or when running NEW INSTALL, route guidance will not be available.

WARNING The distance to be driven for calibration depends on various factors, such as the GPS reception quality and route guidance. The kilometre indication is an average value which can be higher or lower in the case of poor reception conditions.

SECURITY

Activating/deactivating the security code

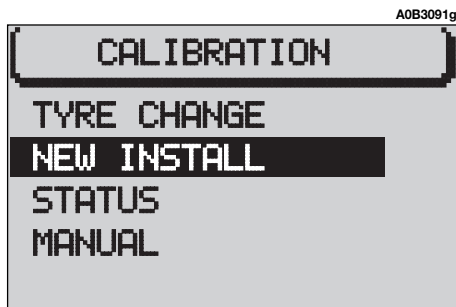
The security code can be activated and deactivated by selecting SAFETY in the SETTINGS menu. When the protection is on, the device can only be switched on by entering a safety code after disconnecting the battery (see paragraph “Entering the security code” in section “Antitheft protection system”).

WARNING This is the only theft-prevention countermeasure of the system. We recommend you activate the security code.

Proceed as follows to activate/deactivate the code:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the SETTINGS menu



3) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select **SAFETY** (**fig. 126**)

4) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the selection

5) select **CODE** by turning the knob/button **(11)**

6) press the knob/button **(11)** to select **ON** or **OFF**. The default setting is **OFF** (security code off). In any case, enter the security code

7) select symbol **↓** by turning the knob/button **(11)**

8) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the selection.



fig. 126

Activating/deactivating the security led

The security led can be activated/deactivated in the **CODE-SETUP** menu. Proceed as follows:

1) press the **NAV** button **(12)** to open the main navigation menu

2) press the **MEN** button **(10)** to open the **SETTINGS** menu

3) select **SAFETY** (**fig. 126**) by turning the knob/button **(11)**

4) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the selection

5) select **LED** (**fig. 127**) by turning the knob/button **(11)**

6) press the knob/button **(11)** to select **ON** or **OFF**. The default setting is **ON** (security led active).

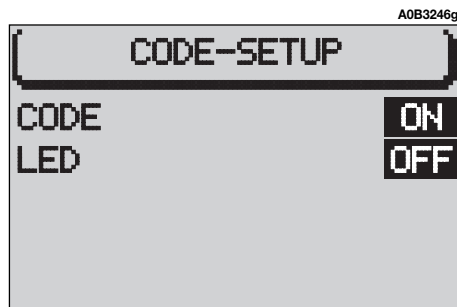


fig. 127

RESETTING DEFAULT SETTINGS

To reset the Navigator default settings:

1) press the **NAV** button **(12)** to open the main navigation menu

2) press the **MEN** button **(10)** to open the **SETTINGS** menu

3) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select **DEFAULT SET.** (**fig. 128**)

4) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the selection.

There are three situations (**A**, **B** and **C**). The screens will appear on the display accordingly:

Situation A) With a navigation CD inserted. A reset (clear) message will appear on the display. The destination memory and the route options will be deleted.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

- 1) select YES by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

To keep the memory data:

- 1) select NO by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

The system will automatically go to the following question if there is no navigation CD inserted.

Situation B) A CD sound setting deletion message will appear on the display.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

- 1) select YES by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) for longer than two seconds to confirm the selection.

To keep the memory data:

- 1) select END by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) for longer than two seconds to confirm the selection.

Situation C) Finally, a SETTINGS menu option and sound volume deletion message will appear on the display.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

- 1) select YES by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds to confirm.



fig. 128

To keep memory data:

1) select NO by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds to confirm the selection.

WARNING In all three cases, select YES to reset (clear) the memory. The system will automatically switch off and on again.

WARNING Select NO in any case to automatically return to the SETTINGS menu.

Setting tuner sensitivity

With this function it is possible to change the sensitivity of automatic radio station tuning.

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select FM-SEEK (**fig. 129**)

4) press repeatedly the knob/button (**11**) to select BEST or SENS.

Default setting is BEST.

BEST: only stations with excellent reception are sought (i.e. no disturbance). Use this function when travelling in an area with a large number of broadcasters.

SENS: all the stations are sought. Use this function when travelling in an area with a small number of broadcasters.



fig. 129

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM

GENERAL INFORMATION

The system is equipped with a four-digit secret security code.

This ensures that the system cannot be used if it is removed from the dashboard (i.e. stolen).

CODE CARD

This card (**fig. 130**) certifies that you are the owner of the navigation system.

The model, serial number and secret code are printed on the card.

WARNING Keep the card in a safe place. You will need the information to report theft to the police. The card is required whenever the battery or power supply is disconnected. You will need to enter the secret code after reconnecting the battery or the power supply.

ENTERING THE SECURITY CODE

Enter the security code when you switch the Navigator on after cutting off the power supply (disconnecting the battery, removing the device, blown fuse, etc.) (**fig. 131**).

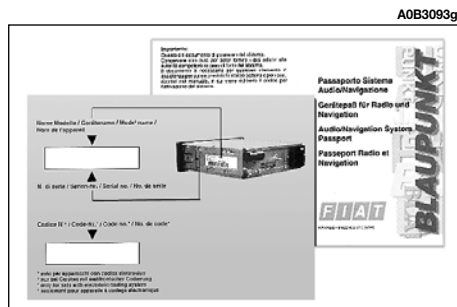


fig. 130

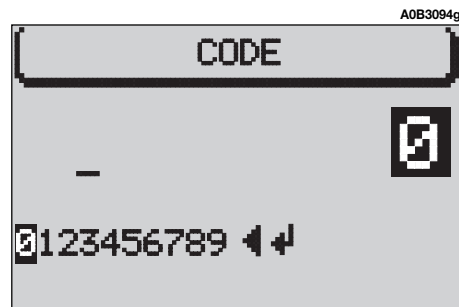


fig. 131

Proceed as follows to enter the security code:

- 1) select the first code digit by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) confirm the first digit by pressing the knob/button (11)
- 3) continue with the other three digits to complete the security code.

Proceed as follows if you make a mistake:

- 1) position the cursor on ◀ (fig. 131) by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

When the code is complete, position the cursor on symbol ↵ and confirm with the knob/button (11). The device will switch to radio mode.

WARNING You can repeat code entry if you make a mistake. The device will however lock out for one hour after the third attempt to prevent entering the code by attempts. Keep the Navigator on for one hour before entering the code again. The timeout (always one hour) will start from zero again if the battery is disconnected during this period of time.

Deactivating/activating the security code

The security code can be deactivated, see paragraph "Security" in section "Basic settings".

The Navigator has a power output max of 4 x 20W. The functions and specifications are illustrated in the following paragraphs.

RADIO

– PLL tuning (Phase Locked Loop) in the FM/MW wavebands.

– RDS (Radio Data System) with TA (Traffic Announcement), EON (Enhanced Other Network), Radiotext (information on the type of programme or broadcast piece name display), REG (Regional Programmes) functions.

– RDS (Radio Data System) alternative frequency tuning.

– Automatic/manual station tuning.

– Manual storage of 30 stations: 24 in FM waveband (6 in FMT, 6 in FM2 and 6 in FMT) and 6 in MW waveband.

– Preselection scanning.

– PTY function: for displaying radio station programme type (if broadcast), e.g. POP, ROCK etc.

TECHNICAL DATA

– SHARX function: for reducing FM interference.

– SCAN function: for scanning all stations which can be received in the selected frequency waveband.

– TIM function (Traffic Information Memory): automatic vocal storage of 14 traffic messages having max. overall length equal to or lower than 4 minutes

– TMC function (Traffic Message Channel): for listening to traffic message channels

– AUTOSTORE function: automatic storage of 6 stations in the devoted FM band.

– Automatic Stereo/Mono selection.

– T-STORE (Travelstore): automatic storage of the 6 stations with the strongest signal in the FM band

COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND CD-Changer (where fitted)

– Select track (forwards/backwards).

– Fast play (forwards/backwards).

– MIX function: random track playback.

– SCAN function: for playing ten seconds of each track on the CD.

– REPEAT function: for repeating the track.

– Programmable track sequence.

– CD Name function: for allocating names to CDs



For installation and respective connections contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services exclusively.

**WARNING**

Multimedia CDs contain sound and data tracks. Playing these CDs can cause noise loud enough to jeopardise road safety and damage final stages and speakers.

AUDIO

- Separate bass/treble settings.
- Right/left and front/rear channel balance.
- LOUDNESS adjustment.

SATELLITE NAVIGATION

- Voice messages for the route to be followed.
- Driving advice, distance and estimated time required to reach the destination on the display.
- Possibility of entering special or different destinations.
- Possibility of storing destinations.

SYSTEM TECHNICAL DATA**Speakers**

The system consists of:

- 2 front tweeters (**A-fig. 132**) 30 W max. power each.
- 2 front (**B-fig. 132**) and two rear speakers (**A-fig. 133**) 165 mm diameter (2 front and 2 rear), 40W power.

Hi-Fi bose system (where fitted)

The system consists:

- 2 front coaxial two-way speakers (**A-fig. 134**), 165 mm diameter and built-in tweeter ;
- 2 rear full range speakers (**A-fig. 133**), 165 mm diameter;
- 1 subwoofer, 225 mm diameter, located on the rear parcel shelf (Saloon versions)
- 1 subwoofer, 130 mm diameter, located on the left side of the boot (Sportwagon versions)

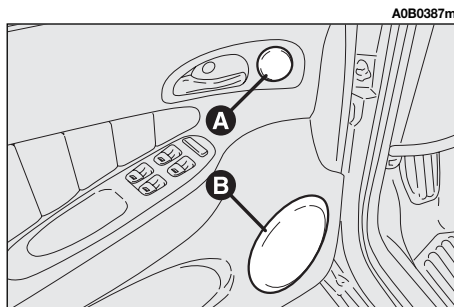


fig. 132

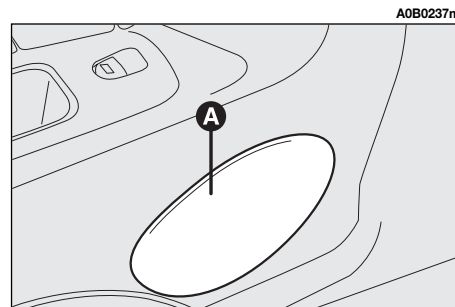


fig. 133

The system features also a high power amplifier (200W max. power) (located under the rear parcel shelf for Saloon versions and built into the subwoofer inside the boot for Sportwagon versions) with 5 channels and HI-FI equaliser.

CD-Changer magazine (where fitted)

The car can be fitted with a CD-Changer for 5 discs, located inside the oddment compartment on the left side of the boot (Sportwagon version) (**A-fig. 135**) or for 10 discs, with CD NAME function), located on the left side of the boot (saloon versions) (**A-fig. 136**).

GPS satellite aerial

A GPS aerial (shown in **fig. 137**) completes the Navigator.

Fuse

The Navigator is protected by a 10A fuse (see **fig. 138**).

A0B0312m

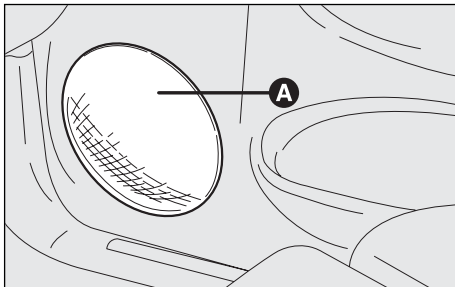


fig. 134

A0B0435m

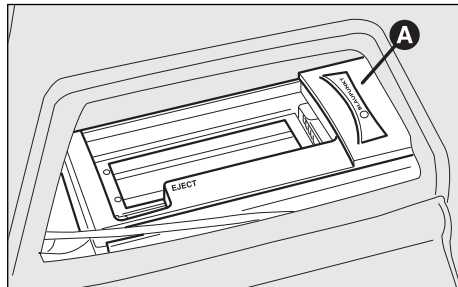


fig. 136

A0B0744m

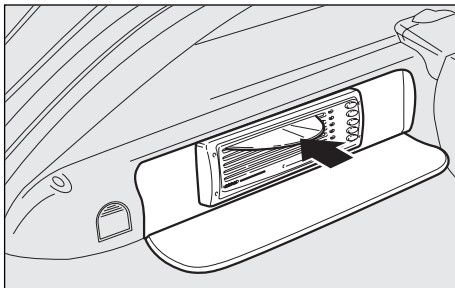


fig. 135

A0B0356b

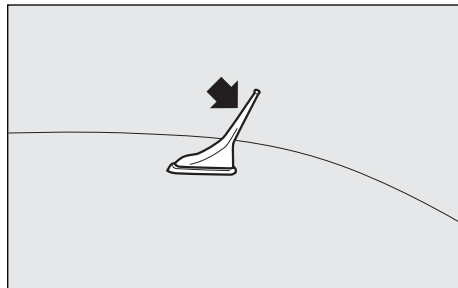


fig. 137

A0B0309b

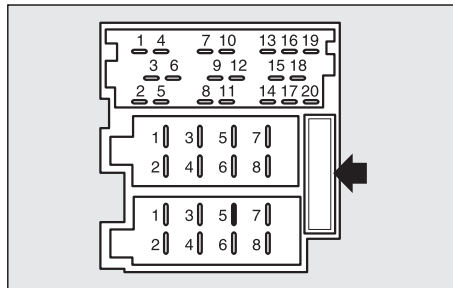


fig. 138

CONNECT Nav

GENERAL INFORMATION	188	REG FUNCTION	204
ADVICE	189	PTY FUNCTION	204
ROAD SAFETY	189	TA FUNCTION	205
RADIOFREQUENCY	189	TMC FUNCTION	206
RECEPTION/TRANSMISSION CONDITIONS	189	SHARX FUNCTION	207
CARE AND MAINTENANCE	190	R-TXT FUNCTION	207
COMPACT DISCS	190	TIM FUNCTION	208
CONTROLS	191	COMPACT DISC PLAYER (CD)	210
CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL	193	INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD	210
OPERATION	195	PLAYING A CD	211
SWITCHING THE CONNECT Nav ON/OFF	195	CD FUNCTIONS	211
SELECTING FUNCTIONS	195	SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS	212
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME	196	SCANNING TRACKS	212
DISPLAY	196	MIX FUNCTION.....	213
ADJUSTING THE SOUND	197	SCAN FUNCTION.....	213
RADIO	198	REPEAT FUNCTION	213
LISTENING TO THE RADIO	198	PROGRAM FUNCTION	214
SELECTING THE WAVEBAND	198	CD NAME FUNCTION	215
TUNING TO FM STATIONS	199	CD CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)	217
STORING STATIONS	199	INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD	217
SCAN FUNCTION	201	PLAYING A CD WITH THE INTERNAL CD PLAYER	219
RDS FUNCTION	203	PLAYING A CD WITH THE CD Changer	220
		TURNING ON THE CD Changer	220

SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS	222	AVOIDING TAILBACKS DURING NAVIGATION	251
SCANNING TRACKS	223	LOCKING A ROUTE SECTION WITHIN A ROUTE LIST	252
MIX FUNCTION	223	CUSTOMISING THE ROUTE	254
SCAN FUNCTION.....	224	DEFINING THE CAR POSITION	255
REPEAT FUNCTION	224	RECEIVING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS DURING NAVIGATION	256
PROGRAM FUNCTION	225	SWITCHING VOICE MESSAGES ON AND OFF	257
CD NAME FUNCTION	227	SWITCHING THE LAST 10 DESTINATION MEMORY ON AND OFF	257
SATELLITE NAVIGATION	229	SWITCHING ROUTE TIME INFORMATION ON AND OFF	258
ROUTE GUIDANCE	229	MANUAL POSITION INDICATION	258
ENTERING THE DESTINATION	230	NAVIGATION SIMULATION	259
ENTERING SPECIAL DESTINATIONS	237		
USING STORED DESTINATIONS	240	TARGASYS SERVICES	260
STORING THE CURRENT POSITION	241	GENERAL INFORMATION	260
ACTIVE NAVIGATION	242	ENABLING PHONE/SIM CARD	261
ROUTE GUIDANCE	242	ENTERING THE TARGASYS NUMBER	262
STOPPING NAVIGATION	243	ENTERING THE PERSONAL NUMBER	263
CHANGING THE AUDIO SOURCE	244	RESET	264
TUNING THE RADIO	244	CONNECT NAV USE	264
NO MAP NAVIGATION	244	"MEDICAL ADVICE" SERVICE	265
DYNAMIC TRAVEL GUIDE	245	"ROAD ASSISTANCE" SERVICE	267
TOURIST GUIDE INFORMATION	246	INFOMOBILITY SERVICES	268
ROUTE LIST	247	"FOLLOW ME" FUNCTION	269
DESTINATION MEMORY	247	RECALLING THE PHONE CODE NUMBER	274
STORING STORED DESTINATIONS	248	RECALLING THE PHONE "STATE" FUNCTION	274
DELETING STORED DATA	249	DISPLAYING AVAILABLE SIM PROFILES	275
ENTERING AND EDITING DESTINATION SHORT NAMES	250		
GPS STATUS AND POSITION INFORMATION	251		

TELEPHONE	276
GENERAL INFORMATION	276
TURNING THE PHONE ON	276
ENTERING THE PIN CODE	276
CHANGING THE PIN CODE	277
SIM CARD UNLOCKING	278
VOLUME ADJUSTMENT	278
SELECTING PHONE NUMBERS	279
SELECTING A NUMBER IN THE PHONE BOOK	281
INCOMING CALLS	282
TELEPHONE CALLS TO FOREIGN COUNTRIES	283
SELECTING THE NETWORK	284
PHONEBOOK	288
MESSAGES (SMS)	290
 BASIC SETTINGS	 295
OPENING THE SETTINGS MENU	295
ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY	295
ADJUSTING POWER-ON, TA ANNOUNCEMENT MESSAGE AND GALA VOLUME	297
SETTING THE CLOCK	299
SELECTING THE LANGUAGE	301
CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM	302
SYSTEM TEST	302
CALIBRATION	304
GPS STATUS	305
SECURITY	306
RESETTING DEFAULT SETTINGS	307

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM	310
GENERAL INFORMATION	310
CODE CARD	310
ENTERING THE SECURITY CODE	310
 TECHNICAL DATA	 312
RADIO	312
COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND CD Changer	312
AUDIO	313
SATELLITE NAVIGATION	313
TARGASYS SERVICES	313
TELEPHONE	313
SYSTEM TECHNICAL DATA	314

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Connect Nav system with integrated sound system and telephone complies with safety rules issued by competent government bodies and organizations.

The telephone integrated with the sound system works on the basis of GSM mobile telephone standards. Such standards determine the use of cellular phones in Europe and other countries, but they have been extended also to other world countries (e.g. VDE DIN 0848).

With this telephone it is possible to make the same telephone connections which can be made with a portable cellular phone. In order to make a telephone call it is necessary to have a SIM card and to be in a place served by the Dual Band network, with enough sign field intensity.

Emergency calls

In order to guarantee the maximum safety, the telephone is set so that the "Emergency 112" call can always be activated, even if the SIM card is not inserted in the slot.

The telephone can make and receive calls when the Connect Nav system is on, when the vehicle is in an area served by a GSM 900/1800 network and when the field intensity is sufficient. That is why connection cannot be assured in every condition. Do not rely only on the radio telephone for vital emergency calls, as in case of request for medical assistance.

ADVICE

ROAD SAFETY

You are recommended to learn how to use the different functions of the Connect Nav and in particular of the radio (e.g. storing stations) before starting to drive.



WARNING

Too high a volume when driving can put the driver's life at risk and that of other people. Therefore the volume should always be adjusted in such a way that it is always possible to hear noises of the surrounding environment (e.g. horns, ambulance, police sirens, etc.).

Carefully respect rules and regulation determining the use of telephones inside cars. Telephone calls when driving shall only be made in case of emergency and using the voice commands. Anyway you are advised to park the car and to use the telephone only when the car is stationary.

RADIOFREQUENCY

The telephone is certified on the basis of GSM standards and complies with safety value limitations for protection against radiofrequency radiations.

The telephone use can alter medical equipment functions (hearing aids, pace maker, etc.) if not adequately protected.

Always turn the telephone off when it is forbidden to use it or in areas with high explosion danger such as filling stations, chemical plants and near explosive agents or blasting charges.

RECEPTION/TRANSMISSION CONDITIONS

Reception conditions (for the radio) or reception/transmission conditions (for the telephone) change constantly when driving. Reception can be disturbed by the presence of mountains, buildings, bridges, particularly when far away from the broadcaster receiver or the radio link for the telephone.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

The structure of the system ensures long years of operation with no need for particular maintenance. In the event of a fault, contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services.

Clean the front panel and display only using a soft, dry antistatic cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface.

Treat the display with care. Do not use pointed or hard objects which might scratch and damage it.

Clean the display with a soft, clean and dry cloth. Do not use solvents which might corrode and damage the display.



Be careful not to knock the display with pointed or hard objects and avoid touching with the hands. Do not press on the display when cleaning. If it gets broken, do not touch the fluid which might come out. In case it gets in contact with the skin, wash it immediately with water and soap.

COMPACT DISCS

If a Compact Disc is used on the Sound system, remember that the presence of dirt or marks on Compact Discs may cause skipping when playing and poor sound quality. The same happens if Compact Discs are bent by accident.

To obtain optimum playing conditions we give the following advice:

- only use Audio Compact Disc with the brand:




- carefully clean all Compact Discs of any fingerprints and dust using a soft cloth. Support Compact Discs on the edges and clean from the centre outwards;


- never use chemical products for cleaning (e.g. spray cans, antistatics or thinners) as they might damage the surface of Compact Discs;

- after listening to them put Compact Discs back in their boxes to avoid marking or scoring which would cause skipping when playing;

- do not expose Compact Discs to direct sunlight, high temperatures or damp for prolonged lengths of time to prevent them from bending;

- do not stick labels or write on the recorded surface of Compact Discs.

1 -  button to open the front

2 -  selector. The functions of this selector depend on the menu and type of operation of the Connect Nav

3 - **AUD** button to open the sound menu


4 - **TA** button to switch the RDS-TA (Traffic Announcement) function on and off

5 - **Display**

6 - Info **i** button

a) press this button when travelling to repeat the last navigation voice message and display the active destination

b) to fully display menu options ending with "..."

7 - : button to access the Telematic Services run by **Targasys**

8 - **T** key to display the TRAFFIC menu including: TIM (Traffic Information Memory) and TMC (Traffic Message Channel) (instructions to detour queues)

9 - **ESC** button

a) to quit the menu without saving data

b) to go back to the previous screen/menu

10 - **MEN** key to display the setup menu

11 - **Knob/button**


The knob/button performs the following functions:


a) turn to select the items on the display


b) press to confirm the selection (OK button)

c) press for longer than two seconds to display 2-D or 3-D icons with active navigation and to confirm entered data.

12 - **NAV** to switch the navigation function on

13 - **Multifunction keys** , the function of these keys depends on the menu

14 - **Multifunction keys** , the function of these keys depends on the menu

15 - Key : to turn the telephone on, with access to the following options:

a) to accept incoming calls

b) to end the call in progress

16 - **Knob/button**

The knob/button performs the following functions:

a) turn to adjust the volume and switch to Mute

b) prolonged press (about 2 seconds) to switch the sound/navigation system on and off

c) brief press (less than 2 seconds): Mute

17 - **SRC**: key: to choose the operating audio source: Radio, CD or CD Changer (CD-C) (where fitted)

18 (fig. 2) - Compact Disc slot

19 (fig. 2) - Compact Disc eject button

20 (fig. 2) - Led indicating that the (audio or navigation) CD is inserted in the slot

21 (fig. 3) - GSM module with slot (A) to insert SIM card (C). To use the GSM module open the glovebox on the passenger's side.

To insert the SIM card: fit the **SIM card** with the contact surfaces downwards and the side with the oblique cut on the front side and on the left side in the **SIM card** compartment; push the SIM card until it clicks into place.

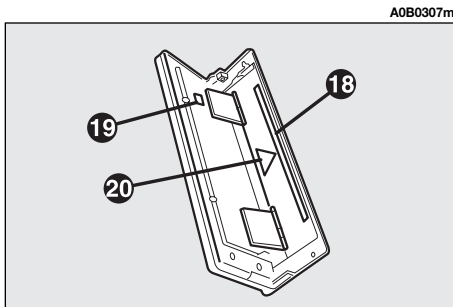


fig. 2

To eject the SIM card: To eject the **SIM card** press it slightly and guide it.

The GSM module bears a label showing how to insert and eject the SIM card correctly.

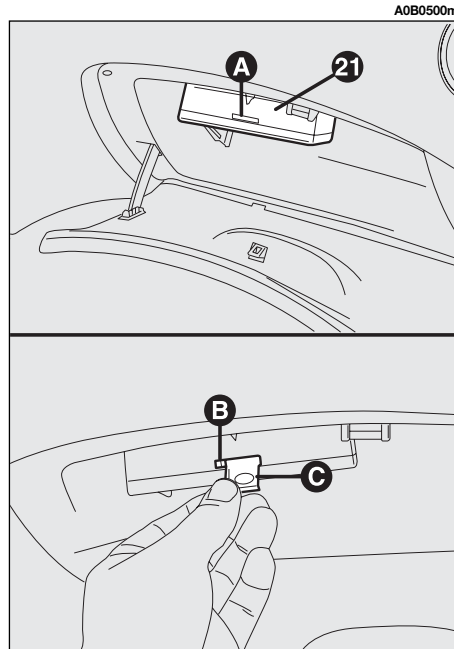


fig. 3

CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL (where fitted) (fig. 4)

The main functions of the sound system are repeated on the steering wheel, which facilitates control.

1. Volume highering button
2. Volume lowering button
3. Mute button
4. Radio frequency range select button (FM1, FM2, FMT, FMC, MW) and available audio source (Radio - CD or CD-C)
5. Multifunction key:
 - Radio: manual station tuning
 - CD: **brief press**: next track selection **long press**: current track fast forward
 - CD Changer (where fitted): **brief press**: next track selection **long press**: current track fast forward

6. Multifunction key:

- Radio: manual station tuning
- CD: **brief press**: previous track selection
long press: current track fast backward
- CD Changer (where fitted): **brief press**: previous track selection
long press: current track fast forward

Volume adjustment keys (1), (2) and (3)

The volume adjustment keys (1) and (2) and for activation/deactivation of the Mute function (3) work just like the sound system corresponding keys.

Source selection key (4)

To cyclically select the available audio source (Radio, CD or CD Changer) available briefly and repeatedly press key (4).

Multifunction keys (5) and (6)

Using the multifunction keys (5) and (6) it is possible to call the preset radio stations or to select the next or previous CD/track when playing the CD Changer.

Press button (5) to choose the next preset stations or play the CD/next track.

Press button (6) to choose the previous preset stations or play the previous CD/track.

A0B0357m

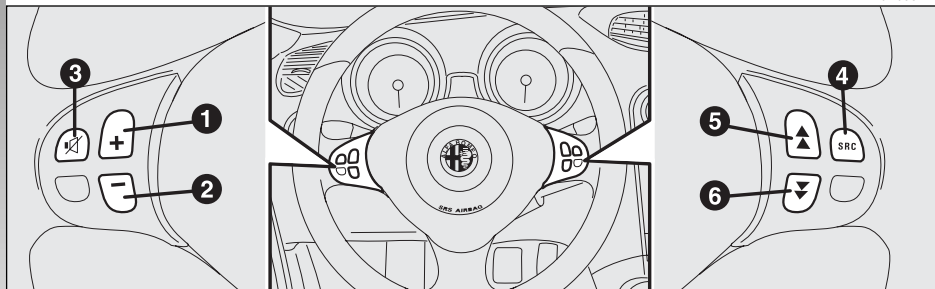


fig. 4

OPERATION

SWITCHING THE CONNECT Nav ON/OFF

To turn the Connect Nav on, keep the knob/button (16) pressed for about 1 second. The sound system will automatically switch to the last active sound source at the previously selected volume.

WARNING The sound source is usually played at the last selected volume when the system is switched off and back on. However, if the volume was higher than the preset volume, the sound source will be played at the preset volume.

To set the power-on volume, see “Adjusting power-on, TA, announcements, message and gala volume” in “Basic settings” section.

Switching on and off with engine off

The Connect Nav can also be operated when the engine is not running (ignition key at **STOP**).

Press the knob/button (16) for approximately one second.

WARNING The device will automatically be switched off when the ignition key is at **STOP** after approximately one hour to safeguard the car battery. Start the engine to reset the timeout.


SELECTING FUNCTIONS

To select the required audio source, proceed as follows:

- press SRC (17);
- turn the knob/button (16) to select the required operating mode (Radio or CD-Changer).

To start navigation, press NAV (12).

The specific main menu/screen will appear for each selected source.

To access the phone mode, press  (15) button.

To access the **Targasys** services, press  (7) button.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

To turn the volume up: turn the knob/button (16) clockwise.

To turn the volume down: turn the knob/button (16) anticlockwise.

The volume is graphically shown on the display during the adjustment (audio source main menu only) (**fig. 5**).

WARNING The volume of a navigation voice message can be changed, regardless of the basic sound source volume.



DISPLAY (fig. 6)

The display will switch to night-time operation (reversed colours) when the side/tail-lights are switched on (**fig. 7**). This function can be switched off if you need to travel in daytime with the headlights on (see “Adjusting the display” in section “Basic settings”).

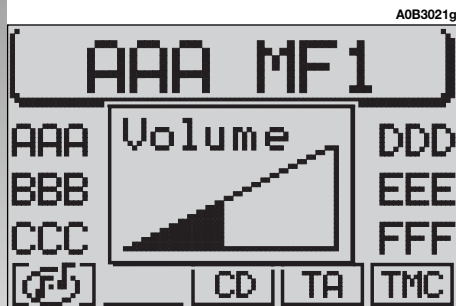


fig. 5

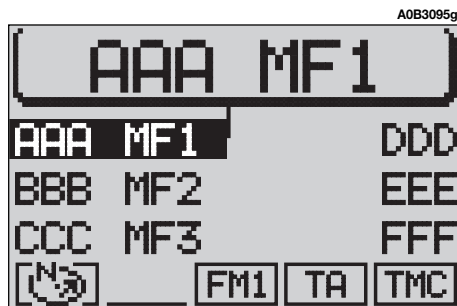


fig. 6

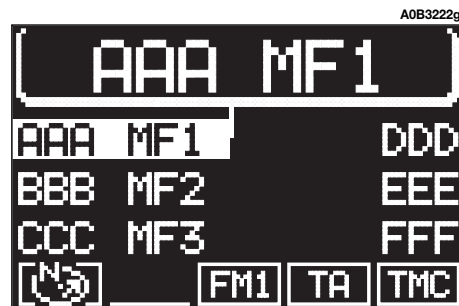


fig. 7

ADJUSTING THE SOUND (AUD MENU)

The “bass” and “treble” can be separately adjusted for each sound source. The Balance, Fader and Loudness settings are in common for all sources.

Proceed as follows to adjust the sound:

1) press SRC (**17**) to display the SRC menu

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select th required audio source (Radio, CD or CD Changer, where fitted)

3) press AUD (**3**) to display the audio menu for adjusting the sound (**fig. 8**)

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required menu option

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm and select the function to be adjusted (“BASS”, “TREBLE”, etc. . .) (**fig. 9**)

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to adjust, as required

WARNING If the car is fitted with Bose HI-FI system, Loudness function cannot be adjusted (**fig. 10**).

To store the edited values, press the knob/button (**11**).

To return to the previous menu **without storing** the edited values, press the ESC button (**9**).

WARNING The display will automatically return to the previous menu if no button is pressed for longer than 30 seconds.

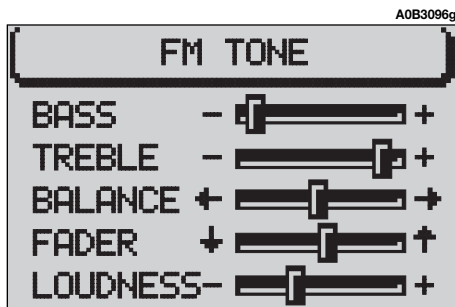


fig. 8

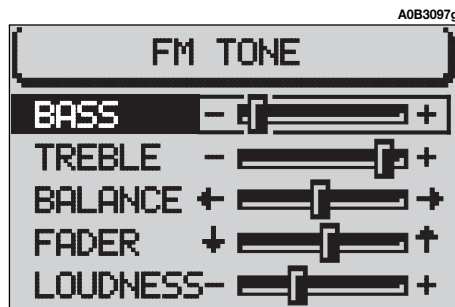


fig. 9

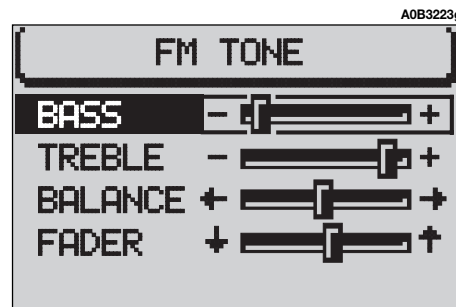


fig. 10

RADIO

LISTENING TO THE RADIO

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press SRC (17)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select Radio (fig. 11), press ESC (9) if a CD is inserted in the CD-Changer
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection.

The main Radio menu (fig. 12) is displayed and the radio tunes to the last station selected before switching off.

The station tuned to before switching the system off and the six stations available in the waveband will appear in the upper row of the display.

With the exception of the AUDIO menu, the presence of an audio or navigation CD, the tuning waveband (es. FM1), TA or TMC state are always displayed at the bottom of the display.

SELECTING THE WAVEBAND

The device receives stations in the FM and MW frequencies (fig. 13). Press SRC (17) to select the required waveband in Radio mode.

Tuning to radio stations

The multiple function buttons (13 and 14) are used to select preset stations (press briefly) and to store other stations (press longer).



fig. 11

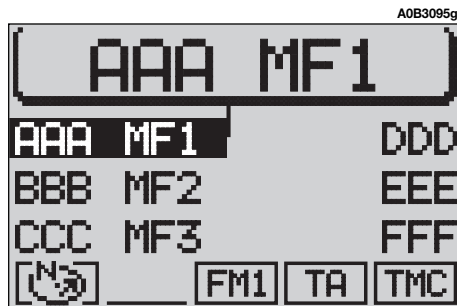


fig. 12



fig. 13

TUNING TO FM STATIONS

Automatic tuning

1) Press the MEN button **(10)**, in Radio mode to display the Radio menu **(fig. 14)**

2) press key **(14)** relevant to SEARCH until the required option ">", or ">>" is displayed (the default setting is ">>>").

3) press >> or << on selector **(2)** to start the station search.

WARNING Only stations broadcasting traffic announcements will be stored when the TA function is on (TP message on the display).

Manual tuning

To manually tuning to a station, proceed as follows:

1) switch the RDS function off (see "RDS function" in this chapter) to display the frequencies

2) in Radio mode, press the MEN button **(10)**, the Radio menu will appear on the display **(fig. 14)**

3) press key **(14)** relevant to SEARCH until > is displayed

4) press >> or << on selector **(2)** to start station search.

The frequency will gradually change in 100 kHz steps in the FM waveband and in 9 kHz steps in the MW waveband.

STORING STATIONS

Up to 24 FM stations in the four wavebands (FM1, FM2, FMT and FMC) and six MW stations can be stored.

Manual storage

Proceed as follows to manually store the stations:

1) in Radio mode, press SRC **(17)** button. The Radio functions menu will appear on the display **(fig. 15)**



fig. 14



fig. 15

2) select the required FM storage waveband, i.e. FM1, FM2, FMT, FMC or the MW waveband with button **(13)** or **(14)**.; The system will automatically return to the main radio menu as soon as the selection is made

3) tune the station with button **>>** or **<<** on selector **(2)**

4) press button **(13)** or **(14)** corresponding to the selected waveband and hold it pressed until the volume is muted (stored done signal). The frequency or the name of the stored station will appear on the display under the selected position.

T-STORE automatic storage

The system can automatically store the six strongest stations in the FMT storage waveband.

With TA function (Traffic Announcement) on, only the stations with the strongest signal (broadcasting traffic bulletins) are stored.

WARNING The T-STORE function will replace the previously stored stations.

Proceed as follows to start the T-STORE automatic storage procedure:

1) in Radio mode, press SRC **(17)**. The Radio function menu will appear on the display

2) press the **(13)** button next to PAGE 2

3) press key **(14)** to display T-STORE **(fig. 16)**

When the Travelstore function is on, the upper row of the display will show the operation progress in percentage.

At the end of the storage procedure, the system will automatically switch over to the FMT waveband and the stored stations will be played for a short while.



fig. 16

Automatic storage TMCSTORE

The system can automatically store the six strongest stations broadcasting in the area that you are travelling in, in the FMC storage waveband.

WARNING The TMCSTORE function will replace the previously stored stations in the FMC waveband.

WARNING The TMCSTORE function can be activated only if the navigation CD (featuring TMC info - in this case TMC is written on the CD cover) relevant to the country that you are travelling in has been inserted once at least.

To start TMCSTORE proceed as follows:

1 in Radio mode, press SRC (**17**): the display will show the Radio function menu (**fig. 17**)

2 press the (**13**) button next to PAGE 2

3 press (**14**) to display TMCSTORE (**fig. 17**)

When Travelstore function is on, the upper row of the display will show the operation progress in percentage.

At the end of the storage procedure, the stations stored in the FMC waveband will be played for a short while, then the radio will tune automatically to the first stored station.

WARNING Automatic station storage through the TMCSTORE function could require a long time since scanning of TMC stations that can be received in the FMC frequency range is performed.

SCAN FUNCTION

The SCAN function is used to scan all the stations which can be received in the waveband. Each station will be played for ten seconds. The SCAN function will end automatically after running a complete search. If the TA function is on, the system will only include stations broadcasting traffic announcements (the TA or TP symbol will appear in the lower row of the display).

To start the SCAN function, proceed as follows:

1 in Radio mode, press SRC (**17**), the display will show the Radio functions menu (**fig. 15**)

2 press button (**13**) next to PAGE 2



fig. 17

3) press **(13)** relevant to SCAN (**fig. 18**): scanning is started and during scanning the display will show SCAN (**fig. 19**)

Press ESC (**9**) to end the SCAN function. The search will stop at the last station.

TMC-SCAN function

This function is used to scan all the stations that can be received in the FMC waveband.

Proceed as follow to start the TMC-SCAN search:

1) in Radio mode, press SRC (**17**): the display will show the Radio functions menu (**fig. 15**)

2) press the **(13)** button next to PAGE 2

3) press button **(13)** next to TMC-SCAN

The search will start and TMC-SCAN in progress will appear on the display.

Press ESC button (**9**) to end the TMC-SCAN function or to play a found station. The search will stop at the last station.



fig. 18

fig. 19

fig. 20

RDS FUNCTION (RADIO DATA SYSTEM)

The Radio Data System is a service provided by radio stations to facilitate FM wave-band tuning.

The RDS allows - for enabled stations - automatic tuning to the best frequency of the selected station (alternative frequency function). This means that you can listen to the station without retuning when you change area. Obviously, the station must be received in the area that you are travelling in.

Furthermore, the RDS displays the station name (Program Service function, up to eight characters) and the traffic announcement status: the system will seek the best frequency of the required station.

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to use the RDS:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**). The display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 21**)

2) repeatedly press the button (**14**) next to the RDS message to select the required operations (VAR, FIX or OFF) (the default setting is VAR) described below:

FIX Switches the Radio RDS function on. Since some stations use RDS to broadcast advertisements in addition to the station name, you can decide to display only the station name.

VAR Basic setting with which the Radio RDS function is fully active. Advertising will also be shown on the display.

OFF Switches the RDS function off. Stations are tuned to by indicating the frequency on the display (example: 87.5). Under this condition also the TA function is off.



fig. 21

REG FUNCTION

At certain times of the day, some stations broadcast different local (regional) programmes. When the function is off and you are tuned to a local station in a certain area, you will receive a new local programme when entering a new area.

Switching on and off

Tune to FM and proceed as follows to switch the REG function on:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**), the display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 22**)

2) press the button (**13**) next to REG. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is OFF (i.e. the function is not active). When the function is on, the system will change the frequency only when the current frequency can no longer be received.

PTY FUNCTION (PROGRAM TYPE)

PTY is an RDS function. The stations use PTY to broadcast the contents of their programmes (POP, ROCK, etc.) to help you make your choice.

The programme contents will appear for a few seconds when the PTY function is on and a new station is tuned to. The contents will not be displayed if the station does not use the PTY function.

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the PTY function on and off:

1) in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**) the display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 22**)

2) press button (**14**) next to PTY. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is ON.

PTY (**fig. 23**) will be displayed when tuning to a radio station when the function is on.



fig. 22

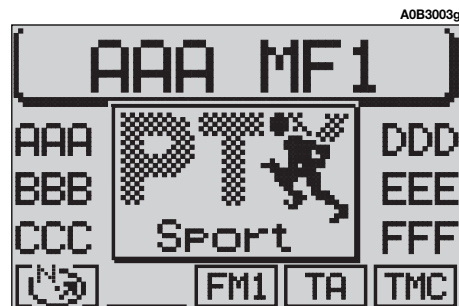


fig. 23

Alarm messages

When the PTY function is on, the system can receive alarm messages (example: weather conditions). In this case, the warning message will appear on the display and the announcement will be made at the volume set for traffic announcements.

To stop the alarm message, press either MEN (10) or ESC (9).

TA FUNCTION (TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT)

This function can be switched on only in Radio mode in the FM waveband.

When listening to the CD source, the CD changer (where fitted) or when the navigation system is on and the TA button (4) is pressed, the radio will switch to the FM waveband in background and activate the TA function. This will not change the sound source and the message "TA" will appear on the display.

When the TA function is on, you can listen to traffic announcements even when the CD player or CD changer (where fitted) is on or in navigation mode. The system will automatically switch to the station broadcasting the traffic announcement. At the end of the announcement, the system will automatically return to the previous source.

Press the TA button (4) to switch the TA function off.

WARNING In Radio mode, with the TA function on, a beep will be heard if you leave the area where the station broadcasting traffic announcements can be received. In this case, an automatic TP (Traffic Program) search will be started.

Interrupting traffic announcements

When the TA function is on, press either TA (4) or MEN (10) or change station to interrupt the traffic announcement.

TMC FUNCTION (TRAFFIC MESSAGE CHANNEL)

The TMC function is used to receive traffic information which is then analysed by the system in order to “guide” the driver to the required preset destination.

Since only some stations are enabled to provide the TMC function, it is possible that traffic information in certain areas cannot be received.

When the “Dynamic travel guide” function is on (see “Dynamic travel guide” in chapter “Navigation”), the system will tune automatically to a TMC station.

The “TMC” message will appear in the lower row of the display when a TMC station is selected.

Up to six TMC stations can be stored in the FMC storage waveband (see paragraph “Automatic storage of TMCSTORE”).

Through this function it is therefore possible to store the six strongest stations broadcasting in the area that you are travelling in.

Displaying TMC stored messages

To display TMC traffic messages, proceed as follows:

- 1) press the T button (8)
- 2) use the knob/button (11) to select TIM/TMC (fig. 24)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection
- 4) press key (13) relevant to T-INFO (fig. 25)

The display will show the last traffic message. The upper line will show the message number and the number of stored messages.

Number 1 always indicates the last message.

5) use the knob/button (11) to select one of the messages

6) after reading the required traffic message, press T (8) or ESC (9) to quit

WARNING TMC messages referring to roads distant more than 100 km from the current car position, are not processed by the TMC function.

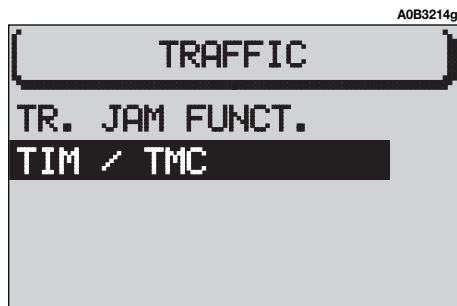


fig. 24



fig. 25

SHARX FUNCTION

Occasional interference in the signals can occur when tuned to FM radio stations caused by stations broadcasting on very close frequencies. The SHARX function reduces such interference.

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the SHARX function on and off:

1 in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**), the display will show the Radio functions menu (**fig. 26**)

2 press button (**13**) next to SHARX. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is ON.

R-TXT FUNCTION

R-TXT option enables to receive and display text messages provided by certain RDS stations. In addition to the station name this function provides also information on the programme being broadcast or shows the title of the piece of music being played.

Switching on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the Radiotext function on and off:

1 in Radio mode, press MEN (**10**): the display will show the Radio menu (**fig. 26**)

2 press (**13**) relevant to R-TXT. The message ON or OFF will appear. The default setting is OFF.

When the display shows the message "Radiotext" and you want to change station, proceed as follows:

1 in Radio mode, press the TU button (**17**) or either the (**13**) or (**14**) button. The Radio functions menu - excluding the Radiotext function - will appear on the display

2 change station: the Radiotext function, if available, will appear on the display



fig. 26

TIM FUNCTION

The device is provided with vocal digital memory. Up to 14 traffic messages having max. overall length equal to or lower than 4 minutes can be stored automatically.

According to the length of the new traffic messages, the oldest ones are cleared.

WARNING Traffic messages longer than four minutes are recorded partly. In this case the message OVERFLOW will appear on the display.

When a new traffic message arrives while you are listening to a TIM message, the latter one is stopped and the new arrived message is transmitted.

Storing traffic messages

Traffic messages are stored automatically when listening to TA stations or when the TIM function is on with the device off.

Messages can be stored for 2 hours or 24 hours (see next paragraph "Choosing how long to store traffic messages").

If listening to a station not broadcasting traffic info, switching the device off with the TIM function on will start automatically the search for a TA station.

Choosing how long to store traffic messages

With the device on, proceed as follows to choose how long to store traffic messages:

- 1) press T (8) to display the TRAFFIC menu (fig. 25)
- 2) use the knob/button (11) to select TIM/TMC (fig. 27), then press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 3) press (14) relevant to TIM (fig. 28), until the required indication is displayed 2H = the message will be stored for 2 hours; 24H = the message will be stored for 24 hours or OFF (function off)

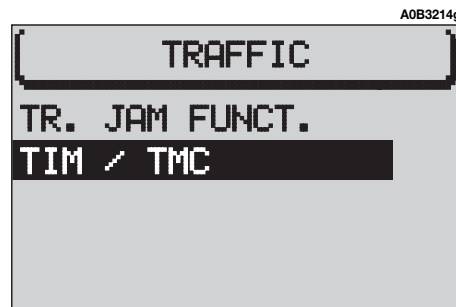


fig. 27

WARNING When the TRAFFIC menu is displayed, the TIM function can be switched on/off by pressing the T button (8) for over 2 seconds.

When switching the device off, the message "GOODBYE" will appear on the display together with the traffic message storage time previously selected.

Listening to stored traffic messages

Proceed as follows:

1) press T (8) to display the TRAFFIC menu (fig. 25)

2) use the knob/button (11) to select TIM/TMC (fig. 27), then press the knob/button (11) to confirm

3) press (13) relevant to TIM-INFO. The last stored message has the highest number (14) and will be played first; then all the other messages will be played in decreasing sequence. The display will also show the time of arrival of the message being played.

Once the message playing procedure is over, the system will automatically switch over to the last selected sound source (Radio, CD or CD Changer).

To listen to the last selected sound source (Radio, CD or CD Changer) without playing all traffic messages, press T (8) or ESC (9) button.



fig. 28

COMPACT DISC PLAYER (CD)

Audio CDs can be played with the internal CD player or with the CD-Changer (where fitted).

During CD playback, either the track number and the playing time, or the track number only, will appear on the display (according to the settings, see “CD functions” in this section).

The main CD menu (**fig. 29**) shows the number of the tracks on the CD and the track being played is highlighted. A graphic symbol progressively indicating the playing time will appear under the track.



fig. 29

A symbol indicating the audio CD, the CD programmed sequence, the current sound source (CD), and the TA and TMC functions status will appear in the lower row of the display.

INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD

Proceed as follows to insert a CD:

- 1) press button **1** to open the front panel
- 2) press button **19** to eject an inserted CD, if any
- 3) place the audio CD with the label facing upwards in the groove on the open front panel edge
- 4) delicately push the CD in the slot until the automatic mechanism takes the CD into the player

5) close the front panel.

CD playing will then start automatically. The display will show the main CD menu (**fig. 29**).

Proceed as follows to eject the CD:

- 1) press button **1** to open the front panel
- 2) press button **19** on the inner side of the front panel (see section “Controls”). The CD will be ejected to half of its diameter
- 3) take the CD from the slot and remove it completely
- 4) close the front panel.

WARNING Only open the front panel to insert and eject a CD. A beep will be heard if the front panel is left open longer than 30 seconds. Close the front panel to stop the warning signal.

PLAYING A CD (INTERNAL PLAYER)

Playback will start automatically as soon as a CD is inserted.

With Navigation mode on

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press SRC (17)
- 2) use the knob/button (11) to display CD-C (fig. 30)

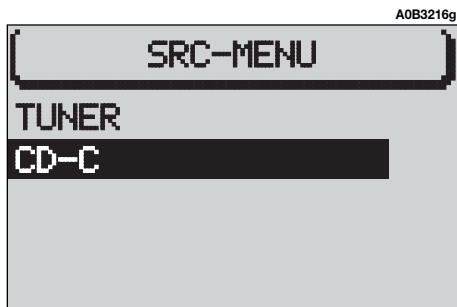


fig. 30

With Radio mode on

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press ESC (9)
- 2) use the knob/button (11) to display CD-C

The display will show the main CD menu (fig. 29) and CD playing will continue.

If no audio CD is inserted, the display will show a warning message.



fig. 31


CD FUNCTIONS

Proceed as follows if the last source was the CD-Changer (where fitted) and there is at least one audio CD inside:

1) go to the CD-C functions menu by pressing SRC (17) the display will show the CD Changer functions menu (fig. 31)

2) press (13) to display the main CD menu (fig. 29) and to start automatically CD playback.

WARNING A warning message will appear on the display if no CD is inserted in the player or if a navigation CD-ROM is inserted and played by mistake.

WARNING Lock symbol  will appear next to CD function menu if there is no audio CD in the internal CD player.

Switching the track playing time/number display on and off

Proceed as follows to display the played track number and the playing time:

1 press the MEN button (**10**). The CD menu will be displayed

2 press (**13**) relevant to TIME (**fig. 32**). ON or OFF will be displayed. The default setting is ON.



fig. 32

Receiving traffic information

To switch the traffic announcement function on and off (see “TA function” in previous section) when listening to a CD: briefly press the TA button (**4**). The TA symbol will either appear (on) or disappear (off) in the lower row of the main CD menu.

SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS

To select next tracks: briefly press >> on selector (**2**); as soon as the last track is reached press again >> on selector (**2**) to return to the first track on the CD.

To play a track again or **to select the previous track** briefly press << on selector (**2**); as soon as the first track on the CD is reached, press again << on selector (**2**) to go back to the last CD track.

SCANNING TRACKS

If you want to listen to a certain part of the track being played, you can scan the track: hold << or >> on selector (**2**) pressed during playback. The track will be scanned forwards or backwards.

MIX FUNCTION (random playback)

Proceed as follows to play the CD tracks in random order:

1) press SRC (17) to display the CD functions menu (fig. 31)

2) press (14) relevant to MIX (fig. 33).

Press ESC (9) to turn the MIX function off.

The MIX function will end automatically if the SCAN function is switched on.



fig. 33

SCAN FUNCTION (scanning all tracks on a CD)

Proceed as follows to listen to the first part of each track on the CD:

1) press SRC (17) the display will show the CD functions menu (fig. 31)

2) press (14) relevant to SCAN (fig. 34).

Press ESC (9) to turn the SCAN function off.

The SCAN function will automatically end if the MIX is switched on.



fig. 34

REPEAT FUNCTION (repeating the CD tracks)

The REPEAT function can be used to repeat a track.

Proceed as follows to switch the REPEAT function on:

1) press SRC (17) to display the CD functions menu (fig. 31)

2) in CD mode, use keys << or >> on selector (2) to choose the required track

3) press (14) relevant to REPEAT (fig. 35).



fig. 35

The track is repeated until the REPEAT function is switched off. The message RPT will appear in the lower row of the main CD menu.

4) press SRC (17) to go back to the main CD menu (fig. 29).

To quit the REPEAT function, repeat operations described in points 2) and 4).

The REPEAT function will end automatically when either the SCAN or MIX functions are switched on.

PROGRAM FUNCTION (programming the track sequence)

You can programme your favourite track sequence and skip the tracks you do not like.

Setting the required sequence

Proceed as follows to set the required sequence:

1) press SRC (17) to display the CD functions menu (fig. 31)

2) press (13) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (fig. 37): if no track has been selected; CLR PRG and RUN cannot be selected (marked with symbol \emptyset).

3) select the first track required using keys << or >> on selector (2).

WARNING The tracks can only be programmed in sequence (example: 1, 4, 7 etc. and not 3, 1, 4 etc.).

4) press the button (13) next to ADD to add the first track to the sequence

5) select next track using keys << or >> on selector (2) and then press (13) corresponding to ADD.

Repeat the procedure for all the tracks to be added to the sequence. The programmed sequence will be stored even after removing the CD from the player.



fig. 36



fig. 37

Deleting tracks from the sequence

Proceed as follows to delete the tracks from the sequence:

1) from the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**) press (**13**) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 37**)

2) select the track to be deleted using keys << or >> on selector (**2**)

3) press button (**13**) next to SKIP.

Running/stopping the track sequence

After entering the required track sequence, press button (**13**) relevant to RUN (**fig. 37**).

The sequence will start from the last selected track. The message TPM will appear on the display.

Press button (**13**) next to RUN to stop a sequence without deleting it.

Deleting a single track sequence

Proceed as follows to delete a programmed track sequence:

1) from the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**) press (**13**) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 37**)

2) press (**14**) relevant to CLR PRG.

Clearing all stored sequence

Proceed as follows to delete all the stored sequences:

1) press (**13**) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 37**)

2) press button (**14**) next to CLR ALL

3) select YES with the knob/button (**11**) at the confirmation message

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

CD NAME FUNCTION (allocating a name to a CD)

This function shall be used to allocate names (max. 7 characters) to CDs.

In saloon versions, fitted with Blaupunkt CD-Changer for 10 discs, the CD name is kept in the memory even after ejecting the CD.

Proceed as follows:

1) press SRC (**17**) to display the CD functions menu (**fig. 31**)

2) press (**13**) relevant to NAME (**fig. 38**) to display the CD Name menu

3) press (**13**) relevant to EDIT (**fig. 39**): to recall the speller (**fig. 40**)

Entering the name

Proceed as follows:

1) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the first letter of the name to be allocated to the CD: the selected letter will be displayed on the right side of the screen (**fig. 40**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the letter will be entered in the upper line

3) proceed in the same way for the other letters

After completing the name, keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over 2 seconds or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (**11**): the CD name will be stored and the CD functions menu will be displayed. The CD name will be displayed in the CD menu section.



fig. 38

Deleting a letter

After entering the name, to delete a letter, press ESC (**9**) or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (**11**).

Deleting the name of the selected CD

Proceed as follows:

1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously

2) press (**14**) relevant to CLR NAME: the name will be deleted, also when recalling the speller again.

To quit the menu, select symbol ◀ or press the knob/button (**11**) for over 2 seconds.



fig. 39

Deleting the names of all the CDs

Proceed as follows:

1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously

2) press (**14**) relevant to CLR ALL; the display will ask for confirmation, select YES with the knob/button (**11**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, otherwise press ESC (**9**)



fig. 40

CD CHANGER - CDC (where fitted)

INSERTING AND EJECTING A CD

Versions with CD loader

Loading the CD loader (saloon versions) (fig. 41)

To insert CDs apply the following procedure:

1) pull the proper lever (**A**) to open one of the ten loader compartments;

2) load the CD taking care to position the CD with the label set on the proper side otherwise the CD player will not work;

3) close the loader compartment;

4) repeat the same procedure for the other Compact Discs.

How to insert the CD-changer in the CD-player

Move the sliding lid (**B**-fig. 42) rightwards until it locks.

Fit down the loader (**A**-fig. 43) completely into the player observing the direction of the arrow marked on the loader side.

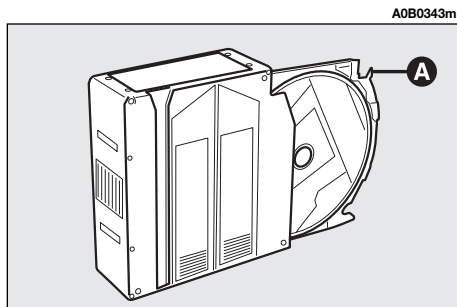


fig. 41

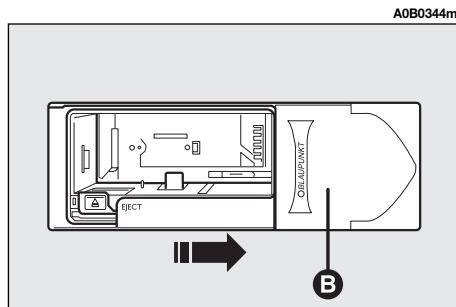


fig. 42

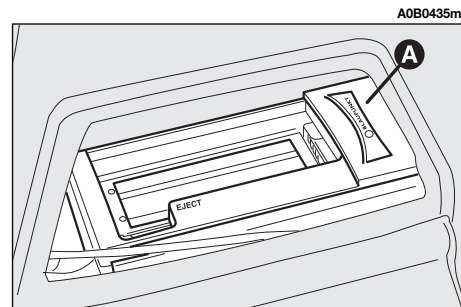


fig. 43

After fitting the CD loader, close the sliding lid (**D-fig. 44**) to prevent foreign matters or dust penetration into the CD player.

Removing the CD loader from the player

Open the sliding lid (**B-fig. 42**), press **EJECT** (**E-fig. 45**) on the player: the loader will be partially ejected.

Carefully remove the loader.

Close the sliding lid.

Ejecting Compact Discs from the loader

Remove the CDs in sequence pulling the lever corresponding to each CD.

A0B0346m

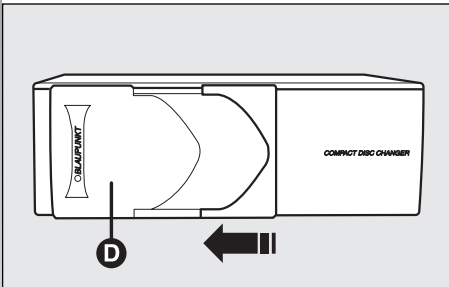


fig. 44

A0B0347m

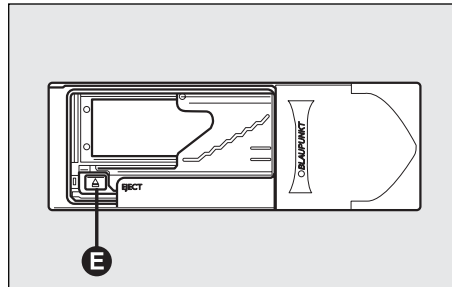


fig. 45

Versions with slots (CD slots)

The CD-Changer is located in the boot inside the left oddment compartment (fig. 46).

WARNING To turn the CD-Changer on, just press one of the buttons set aside the CD slots; the button leds corresponding to the slots loading a CD will turn on.

Inserting/ejecting CDs

To insert CDs: insert the CDs gently, with the label upwards, into the CD-Changer slots to the stop: the powered loading system will load CDs automatically.

To eject CDs: press and keep pressed the button set aside the slot of the CD to be ejected.

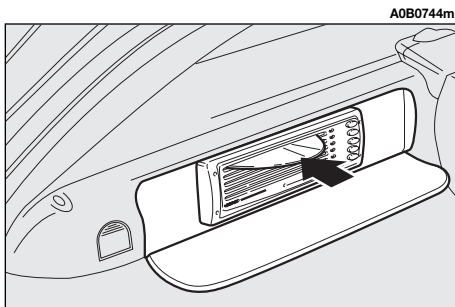


fig. 46

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION CD Changer

The sound system is fitted with a CD Changer antitheft protection system consisting of a four-digit secret code. The protection system makes the CD Changer unusable.

Entering the secret code

Entry of the secret code is required to make the CD Changer work each time it is connected to the sound system.

Connecting the CD Changer to the sound system, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds, followed by four dashes "----".

The secret code consists of four figures from 1 to 6, each corresponding to one of the dashes.

To enter the first digit of the code, press the corresponding button of the preset stations (from 1 to 6). Enter the other code digits in the same way.

If the four figures are not entered within 20 seconds, the display will show again the words "**CDC CODE**" for about 2 seconds and then four dashes "----". This is not to be considered as an incorrect code entry.

After entering the fourth digit (within 20 seconds), the CD Changer starts working.

If a wrong code is entered, the radio sounds a beep, the display shows the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and then four dashes "----" to warn the user that it is necessary to enter the correct code.

If a wrong code is entered for three consecutive times the display will show the words "**CDC WAIT**". During the timeout (1 hour) the sound system can however be used and it is possible to select another sound source or to turn the sound system off.

If another sound source is selected it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure after 1 hour. The timeout will start from 1 hour again if the sound system has been turned off.

When timeout is over if the sound system is in CD Changer mode the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds and it will be possible to start the new code entry procedure. If the sound system is not in CD Changer mode, no message will be displayed. Select CD Changer, the display will show the words "**CDC CODE**" for 2 seconds: now the new code entry procedure can be started.

PLAYING A CD WITH THE CD Changer (where fitted)

With Navigation mode on

To play an audio CD inserted in the CD-Changer when the Navigation function is on, proceed as follows:

- 1) press SRC (17)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to display CD-C (fig. 51)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

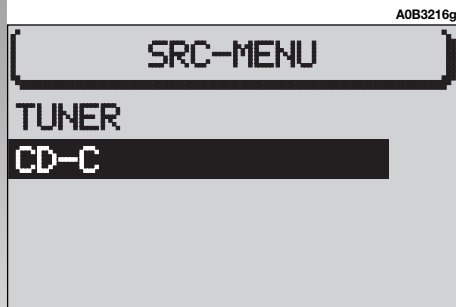


fig. 51

With Radio mode on

To play an audio CD inserted in the CD-Changer when the Radio is on, proceed as follows:

- 1) press ESC (9)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to display CD-C (fig. 51)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

The system will automatically start playing the audio CD in the internal CD player if this was the last source and the CD is still inside. Otherwise, the last played CD or the first CD in the CD-Changer will be played.



fig. 52

TURNING ON THE CD Changer (where fitted)

WARNING The system will automatically start playing the audio CD in the internal CD player if this was the last source and the CD is still inside.

Proceed as follows if there is an audio CD in the internal player:


- 1) press SRC (17) to display the CD functions menu (fig. 52)
- 2) press button (13) next to CD.

The main CD-Changer menu (fig. 53) will be displayed. The track number and playing time will appear in the upper row, while in the middle will be displayed the names of the first 5 CDs inserted in the CD-Changer and the option enabling to go to the second page of the menu.



fig. 53

WARNING If no CD is inserted in the CD-Changer or CDs are illegible, playback of these CD will be impossible. The display will show SCAN or a warning message if after switching the system on the CD-Changer was empty or was containing at least an audio CD.

WARNING The “lock” symbol  will be displayed at the side of the abbreviation CDC and selection key (13) will not work, if the CD-Changer is disconnected or not working.

The playing time indication can be switched off, see “Switching the track playing time/number on and off” in this chapter.

The numbers of the first five CDs in the CD-Changer are displayed next to keys (13 and 14).

The following information will appear in the lower row of the display:

- a symbol indicating the presence of an audio CD or a navigation CD in the internal CD player;
- a symbol indicating the configuration (MIX, SCAN, RPT);
- a symbol indicating the sound source being played;
- a symbol indicating TA function status (traffic announcements);
- a symbol indicating TMC function status.

Shifting to the CD Changer functions menu (where fitted)

To shift from the main CD-Changer menu to the CD-Changer functions menu, press SRC (17): the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu (fig. 54).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.

Selecting CD Changer functions menu (where fitted)

In CD-Changer mode, press MEN (10) to display the CD-Changer functions menu (fig. 54).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.


Selecting a CD

Press keys (13 or 14) relevant to the required CD.

Go to the next main menu page by pressing keys (13 or 14) relevant to CD6-CD10 or CD1-CD5 if the CD-Changer contains more than five CDs and the CD you require is not displayed.



fig. 54

WARNING The “lock” symbol  will be displayed next to CDC if there is no audio CD in the internal CD player. The CD-Changer will not offer this option.

Switching the track playing time/number display on and off

Proceed as follows to display the playing track number:

1 in CD-Changer (where fitted) mode, press MEN (**10**), the display will show the CD-Changer setup menu (**fig. 55**)

2 press (**13**) relevant to TIME. ON or OFF will be displayed.

Traffic information during CD playback

To receive or not traffic announcements (see “TA function” in “Radio” section) when using the CD-Changer (where fitted), briefly press the TA key (**4**). The TA symbol will either appear (on) or disappear (off) in the lower row.

SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS TRACKS

Briefly press button **>>** on selector (**2**) to select next tracks. Press button **>>** on selector (**2**) again as soon as the last CD track is reached to select the first track on the CD.

Press button **<<** on selector (**2**) to repeat the track or select a previous track. Press button **<<** on selector (**2**) again as soon as the first CD track is reached to select the last track on the CD.



fig. 55

SCANNING TRACKS

If you want to listen to a certain part of the track being played, you can scan the track: hold << or >> on selector (2) pressed during playback. The track will be scanned forwards or backwards.

WARNING The display will return to the main CD menu if no operation is carried out in the CD Changer (where fitted), functions menu for 30 seconds.

MIX FUNCTION (random playback)

The MIX function can be used to play in random sequence the tracks on the current CD or on all the CDs in the CD-Changer (where fitted).

Proceed as follows to switch the function on:

1) in CD-Changer mode, press SRC (17) the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu (fig. 57)

2) press (14) relevant to MIX, the display will show MIX in the lower row

3) press MEN (10), the display will show the CD Changer setup menu (fig. 57)

4) press (14) relevant to MIX (fig. 56) to select the required option:

- CD to play the tracks on the current CD in random sequence;
- MAG to play the tracks on all the CDs in the CD-Changer in random sequence.

Press button (14) next to MIX again to switch the MIX function off.

The MIX function will end automatically if the SCAN or REPEAT functions are switched on.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous screen.



fig. 56



fig. 57

SCAN FUNCTION (scanning all tracks on a CD)

The SCAN function plays all the tracks for 10 seconds starting from the current track. Proceed as follows to scan all the tracks on a CD:

1) in CD-Changer mode (where fitted), press SRC (**17**) to go to CD-Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)

2) press (**14**) relevant to SCAN (**fig. 58**): the display will show SCAN in the lower row



fig. 58

3) press MEN (**10**), to display the CD-Changer setup menu (**fig. 57**)

4) press the button (**14**) next to SCAN to select the required option:

- CD to scan all the tracks on the current CD;
- MAG to scan all the tracks on all CDs in the CD-Changer.

Press the button (**14**) next to SCAN again to switch the function off.

The SCAN function will end automatically if the MIX or REPEAT functions are switched on.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous screen.

REPEAT FUNCTION (repeating the CD tracks)

The REPEAT function can be used to repeat the same track or the same CD.

Turning the function on

Proceed as follows:

1) select the required track or CD with button << or >> on selector (**2**) during playback

2) in CD-Changer mode, press SRC (**17**) button, the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)



fig. 59

3) press **(14)** relevant to REPEAT (**fig. 59**), the display will show RPT on the lower row

4) to turn the REPEAT function on, press MEN **(10)**, the display will show the CD-Changer setup menu (**fig. 57**)

5) press button **(13)** next to RPT to select the required option:

- TRK to repeat the current track only;
- CD to repeat the whole CD.

The track or CD will be repeated until the REPEAT function is switched off. The RPT message will appear in the lower row of the main CD menu.

Turning the function off

To turn the REPEAT function off, press ESC **(9)**.

The REPEAT function will end automatically when either the SCAN or MIX functions are switched on.

Press ESC **(9)** to return to the previous screen.

PROGRAM FUNCTION (programming the track sequence)

You can programme your favourite track sequence and skip the tracks you do not like.

Setting the required sequence

Proceed as follows to set the required sequence:

1) select the required CD

2) press SRC **(17)** to display the CD-Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)

3) press **(13)** relevant to PROGRAM (**fig. 60**) to display the CD programming menu. If no track has been selected, CLR PRG and RUN cannot be selected (marked with symbol **⓪**).

4) use key << or >> on selector **(2)** to choose the first track required

5) press **(13)** relevant to ADD

6) use key << or >> on selector **(2)** to select the next track required, then press **(13)** relevant to ADD

Repeat the procedure for all the tracks to be added to the sequence. The programmed sequence will be stored even after the CD is removed from the player.

WARNING The tracks can only be programmed in sequence (e.g.: 1, 4, 7 etc. and not 3, 1, 4 etc.).

WARNING A start will appear next to the CD name the next time that the CD is inserted in the system.



fig. 60

Deleting tracks from the sequence

Proceed as follows to delete the tracks from the sequence:

1) in CD-Changer mode, press SRC (**17**) the display will show the CD Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)

2) press (**13**) relevant to PROGRAM to display the CD programming menu (**fig. 61**)

3) select the track to be deleted using key << or >> on selector (**2**)

4) press (**13**) relevant to SKIP (**fig. 61**).

Running/stopping the track sequence

After entering the required tracks in the sequence, press (**13**) relevant to RUN (**fig. 61**).

The sequence will start from the last selected track. The message TPM will appear on the display.

Press button (**13**) next to RUN to stop a sequence without deleting it.

WARNING You will not be able to select another CD when the TPM function is on. Quit the TPM function to listen to another CD.

Deleting a single track sequence

Proceed as follows to delete a programmed track sequence:

1) select the programmed track sequence to be deleted

2) press (**14**) relevant to CLR PRG (**fig. 61**).

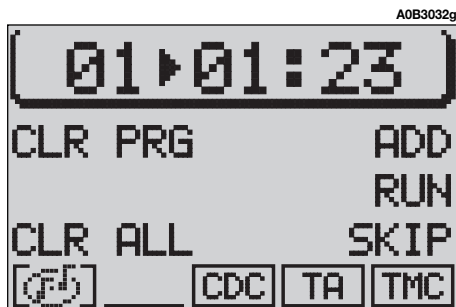


fig. 61

Clearing stored sequences and CD names

Proceed as follows to clear all the stored sequences and CD names:

1 in CD-Changer mode, press SRC (**17**), the display will show the CD-Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)

2 press (**13**) corresponding to PROGRAM to display the CD-Changer programming menu

3 press (**14**) relevant to CLR ALL (**fig. 61**)

4 select YES with knob/button (**11**) at the confirmation message

5 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

CD NAME FUNCTION (allocating a name to a CD)

This function shall be used to allocate names (max. 7 characters) to CDs.

In saloon versions, fitted with Blaupunkt CD-Changer for 10 discs, the CD name is kept in the memory even after ejecting the CD.

Proceed as follows:

1 press SRC (**17**) to display the CD Changer functions menu (**fig. 57**)

2 press (**13**) relevant to NAME (**fig. 62**) to display the CD Name menu

3 press (**13**) relevant to EDIT (**fig. 63**): to recall the speller (**fig. 64**)

Entering the name

Proceed as follows:

1 turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the first letter of the name to be allocated to the CD: the selected letter will be displayed on the right side of the screen (**fig. 64**)

2 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the letter will be entered in the upper line

3 proceed in the same way for the other letters

After completing the name, keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over 2 seconds or select symbol **↵** and press the knob/button (**11**): the CD name will be stored and the CD functions menu (**fig. 60**) will be displayed.

The CD name will be displayed in the CD menu section.



fig. 62

Deleting a letter

After entering the name, to delete a letter, press ESC (9) or select symbol ◀ and press the knob/button (11).

Deleting the name of the selected CD

Proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously
- 2) press (14) relevant to CLR NAME: the name will be deleted, also when recalling the speller again.

To quit the menu, select symbol ↵ or press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds.

Deleting the names of all the CDs

Proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the CD Name menu as described previously
- 2) press (14) relevant to CLR ALL; the display will ask for confirmation, select YES with the knob/button (11)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, otherwise press ESC (9)

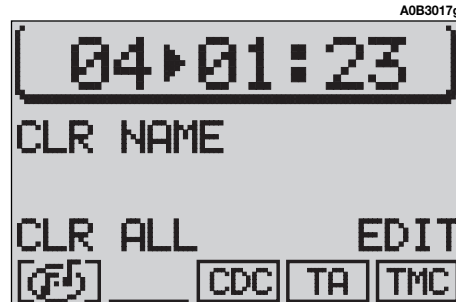


fig. 63



fig. 64

SATELLITE NAVIGATION

The system will help you reach destinations rapidly and safely. After switching the navigation function on, voice messages will guide you to your destination. Driving advice, distances and estimated time required to reach the destination will be shown on the display.

The car's position is defined on the basis of the electronic speedometer signal, of a gyroscope and of the signals transmitted by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

The system compares the data against the maps stored on the navigation CD-ROM and calculates both the position and the routes to reach the destination.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

Proceed as follows:

- 1) insert the CD ROM specific to the country you are travelling in
- 2) press NAV (12) to display the main navigation menu (fig. 65)
- 3) with CD-ROM inserted and main navigation menu active, the display will show the message in (fig. 66).

This message can also be displayed when turning the ignition key to **MAR** with CD-ROM inserted and main NAVIGATION menu active (fig. 65) when turning the system off.

WARNING The message stays on the display according to the CD-ROM scanning time (about 6 to 8 seconds). If the CD-ROM is inserted and main navigation menu is active, the message will stay on the display for the whole period. Turning the ignition key to **MAR**, will display the message for about 2 seconds. This shall be considered as regular.

4) enter the required destination (see next paragraph).

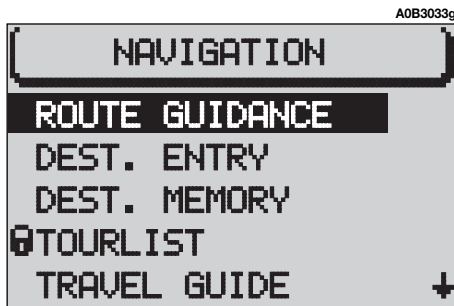


fig. 65

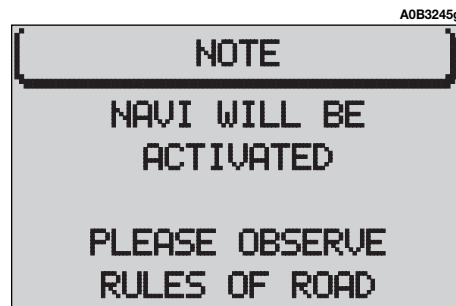


fig. 66



fig. 67

ENTERING THE DESTINATION

Possible destinations include:

- town;
 - town centre or district in a city;
 - street;
 - house number (if contained in the navigation CD data);
 - intersection;
- special destinations can also be entered:
- motorway junctions;
 - railway stations;
 - airports;
 - hospitals, etc.

Proceed as follows to enter a destination:

1 from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 67**) and then press the knob to confirm

2 use the knob/button (**11**) to select CITY (**fig. 68**) and then press the knob to confirm. The editing menu for entering the destination will be displayed.

Entering the destination by the editing menu (Speller) (fig. 69)

The editing menu consists of five sections:

- 1** - list of symbols, letters, spaces, special characters and digits
- 2** - editing list with the first item matching letters in the editing field
- 3** - editing field (writing area)
- 4** - magnifying glass indicating the selected character.
- 5** - pilot symbols



fig. 68



fig. 69

Entering the destination name (fig. 69)

Proceed as follows to enter a name in the editing menu:

1) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field **3**.

When a character is selected, for example letter **Q** **4**, the first item in a list of destinations starting with the letter will automatically be displayed. Other letters in the destination name can be entered to speed up the search.

To display the list directly, move the cursor to symbol **j** and press the knob/button (**11**) or keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over two seconds.

When after entering the name the required item in the editing list appears in field **2**, move the cursor to symbol **↓** and press the knob/button (**11**) or keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over two seconds. The display will show the list of destinations in alphabetical order.

Entering special characters

Proceed as follows if you have to form a destination name using special characters that are not present on the display (e.g.: Ä, Ö, Ü):

1) use knob/button (**11**) to place the cursor on symbol (up/down scrolling arrow)

2) press knob/button (**11**)

Each press on knob/button (**11**) will correspond to a new special character entry.

Deleting characters

Proceed as follows to delete a character entered by mistake:

1) position the cursor by turning the knob/button (**11**), on symbol **◀**

2) press the knob/button (**11**) or ESC (**9**).

Selecting a destination from the list

Proceed as follows to select a destination from the list:

1) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required destination

2) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Scrolling the lists (fig. 70)

Since only five lines can be displayed, some lists are split into several screens. In this case, an arrow ↓ will appear on the bottom right-hand side to indicate that the list continues.

To scroll the list, turn the knob/button (11) in the required direction.

A scrolling arrow ↓ or ↑ will appear on the penultimate line (from the bottom or from the top). Turn the knob/button (11) to display the other lines in the list.



fig. 70

Scrolling lists page by page

The longer lists can be scrolled page by page to seek your destination faster.

Proceed as follows:

1) turn knob/button (11) to position the cursor on the arrow in lower right-hand side of the display

2) press knob/button (11) to confirm the page change. In this way, the following screen will be shown and the cursor will remain on the arrow

3) once you have reached the required page, select as required and confirm by pressing the knob/button (11).



fig. 71

Entering the destination "CITY"

Proceed as follows:

1) select DEST. ENTRY in the main navigation menu with the knob/button (11)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11)

3) use the knob/button (11) to select CITY (fig. 71)


4) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The destination entry menu will be opened

5) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm. The selected character is displayed in the editing field (3-fig. 69)

7) repeat the procedure for the other letters in the name

8) when entering the name, the list of destinations matching the entered letters will appear in the editing list (**2-fig. 66**).


9) position the cursor on the symbol  and press the knob/button (**11**) or hold the knob/button (**11**) pressed for longer than two seconds. The alphabetical list of destinations will appear

10) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required town destination name in the editing list

11) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to not confirm the destination and return to the editing menu (Speller) (**fig. 69**).

After selecting the destination, the sound/navigation system offers the following options: STREET, CENTRE, DEST. SURROUND)

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol  will appear next to the unavailable options.

“STREET” The destination street can be entered. This option depends on the size of the town and data stored on the navigation CD.

Confirm the street. The entering procedure will continue with the following options:

– CONTINUE: select this item to continue;

– INTERSECTION: select this item to define an intersection with the previously selected street as a destination. In this case, an alphabetical list where to select the required intersection will be displayed;

– HOUSE NUMBER: select this item to define a house number on the previously selected street as a destination.

“CENTRE” The town centre or district (for big cities) can be entered as a destination.

“**P.O.I.**” Special destinations in the surroundings of the town - e.g.: motorways, railway stations, shopping centres, etc. - can be directly selected

The system will automatically return to the main navigation menu after the entry.

Select ROUTE GUIDANCE and confirm by pressing the knob/button (11).

The system will calculate the route in a few seconds and start providing visual instructions (drawings) and voice messages to guide you to your destination.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination “STREET”

You can specify a street as a destination in the previously selected town as follows:

1) select DEST. ENTRY (fig. 67) in the main navigation menu with the knob/button (11)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11)

3) use the knob/button (11) to select STREET (fig. 72). The editing menu for entering the street (fig. 73) will be displayed

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the menu for entering the destination will be displayed

5) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

6) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will appear in the editing field

7) repeat the procedure for the other letters in the name

8) when entering the name, the list of destinations matching the entered letters will appear in the editing list

9) position the cursor on the symbol ↵ and press the knob/button (11) or hold the knob/button (11) pressed for longer than two seconds. The alphabetical list of destinations will appear on the display



fig. 72



fig. 73

10) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required street name in the editing list

11) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

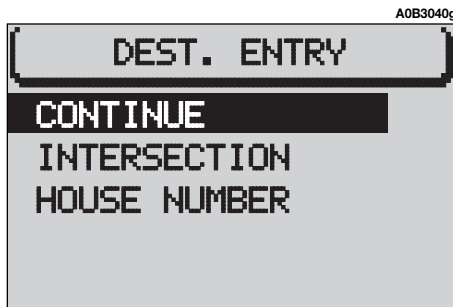


fig. 74

Entering the destination "HOUSE NUMBER"

Proceed as follows to reach a house number:

1) enter the street as described previously

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to select HOUSE NUMBER (**fig. 74**), the display will show the available street number list (**fig. 75**)

3) position the cursor on the required number by turning the knob/button (**11**)

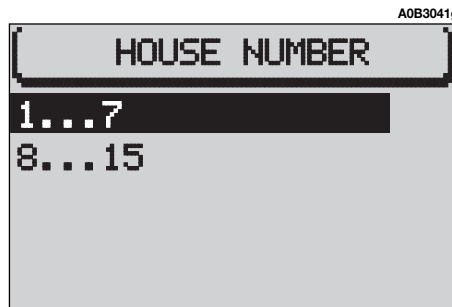


fig. 75

4) confirm the number by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected number will be highlighted on the display

5) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination "INTERSECTION"

Proceed as follows to reach an intersection:

1) enter the street name as described above

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to select INTERSECTION (**fig. 74**), the display will show the intersection list (**fig. 76**).

WARNING If the list includes more than 5 names, see paragraph "Entering the destination name" in this section to speed up the search.



fig. 76

3) position the cursor on the required intersection by turning the knob/button (**11**)

4) confirm the intersection by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol **🔒** will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination "TOWN CENTRE"

Proceed as follows to reach town centre:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 77**).

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select CENTRE (**fig. 78**), the display will show the editing menu for entering the town (see "Entering the destination "City" in this section).

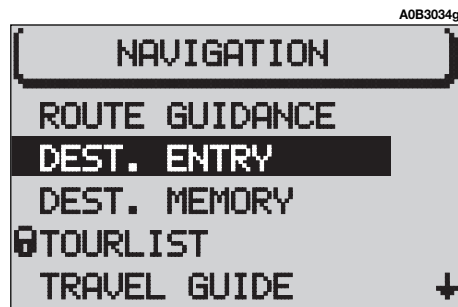



fig. 77

4) enter the town and confirm with the knob/button (11). The list of town centres and districts will appear on the display

5) position the cursor on the required town centre by turning the knob/button (11)

6) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected town centre will be highlighted on the display

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (11).

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol  will appear next to the unavailable options.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

ENTERING SPECIAL DESTINATIONS

These are destinations contained in directories in alphabetical order and include motorways, railway stations, shopping centres, service stations, parking areas, etc.

Special destinations can be sought in four different ways:

– IN DEST. AREA: displaying the special destinations related to the previous selection;

– SUPRAREG. DESTS. (supraregional destinations): displaying special destinations in other locations with respect to the selected destination. The directories only refer to the country on the CD;

– DEST. SURROUND (destination surroundings): displaying special destinations (example: sports grounds, etc.) in the area surrounding the previously selected destination;

– POS. SURROUND. (position surroundings): displaying special destinations near the current position of the car.

WARNING You will need to have entered a destination: CITY or STREET, CENTRE or INTERSECTION to have access to the directories.



fig. 78

Entering the destination "IN DEST. AREA"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 79**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 80**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

4) select IN DEST. AREA (**fig. 81**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

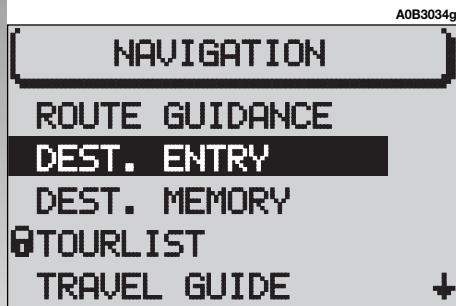


fig. 79

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 80

Entering the destination "SUPRAREG. DESTS."

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 79**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 80**), the P.O.I. (special destinations) menu (**fig. 81**) will be displayed

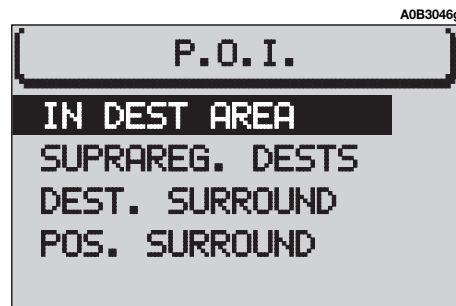


fig. 81

4) select SUPRAREG. DESTS (**fig. 82**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

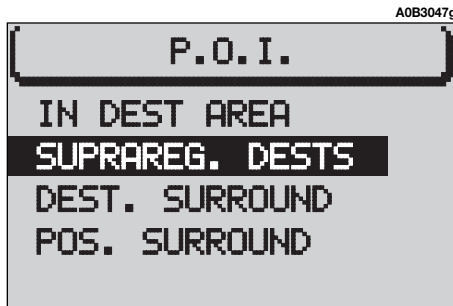


fig. 82

Entering the destination "DEST. SURROUND"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 79**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 80**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

4) select DEST. SURROUND (**fig. 83**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Entering the destination "POS. SURROUND"

Proceed as follows:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. ENTRY (**fig. 79**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The destination entry menu will be started

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select P.O.I. (**fig. 80**), the special destinations menu will be displayed

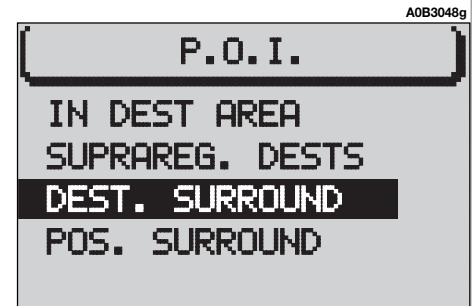


fig. 83

4) select POS. SURROUND (**fig. 84**) turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The directory list will be displayed

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to seek the required destination in the list

7) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

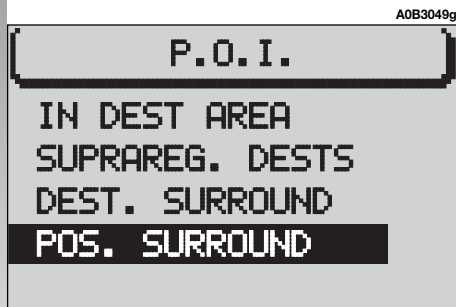


fig. 84

USING STORED DESTINATIONS

You can use previously stored destinations. Three memory categories are offered:

– LAST 10: the last ten navigation destinations. The destinations are automatically entered in the LAST 10 memory when the LAST 10 option in the DSC NAVI navigation menu is on. See “Destination memory” in the “Active navigation”;

– POSITION MARK: car position is stored and can be selected as a destination;

– ALPH. SORTING (alphabetical sorting): the destinations are stored in alphabetical order;

– MANUAL SORTING: the destinations are shown in the previously set order.

Proceed as follows to use a previously stored destination:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to display the main navigation menu

2) use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 85**)

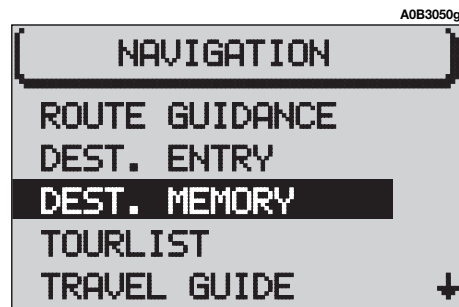


fig. 85

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The destination memory menu will be displayed (**fig. 86**)

4) position the cursor on the required destination by turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

STORING THE CURRENT POSITION

Proceed as follows to store the current position:

1) from the main menu, use the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 85**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The menu for entering the destination will be displayed

3) use the knob/button (**11**) to select POSITION MARK (**fig. 87**)

4) confirm the destination with the knob/button (**11**).

WARNING This procedure can only be carried out with a navigation CD inserted in the drive.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 86



fig. 87

ACTIVE NAVIGATION

ROUTE GUIDANCE

Active navigation requires an entered destination (see “Entering the destination” in section “Satellite navigation”) and route options settings.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press NAV (12), to display the main navigation menu (fig. 88)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE GUIDANCE
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to display the route guidance menu (fig. 89).

The system will start computing the route. The calculation can take several seconds according to the distance. During this time CALC or RECALC are shown on the display (if a previous route guidance is on). The distance to be travelled to reach the destination will be shown under the time.

The upper row will display the name of the street you are crossing or the name of the street where you have to turn.

WARNING If you leave the indicated route, the audio/navigation system will display the message OFF ROAD or OFF MAP (in the case of insufficient positioning data).

The route guidance instructions are shown on the display.

Instructions can be displayed in 2-D (fig. 89) or 3-D (fig. 90).

To select the required option, press the knob/button (11) for approximately three seconds until the instruction changes.

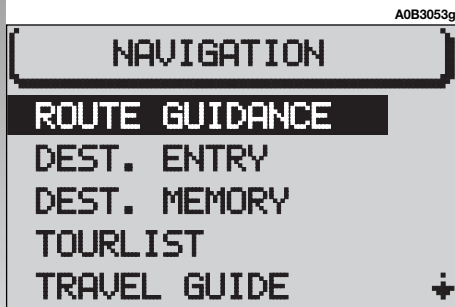


fig. 88

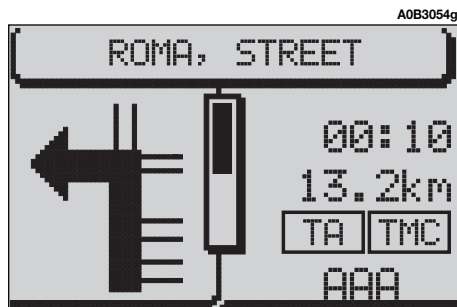


fig. 89



fig. 90

The distance before the turning point and the time required to reach the destination or the estimated arrival time are shown on the display (see “Switching route time information on and off” in this section).

Furthermore, the traffic announcement status (TA function) and the TMC status (Traffic Message Channel) are shown on the display.

The active audio source is shown on the display along with the name or the frequency of the station tuned to (see paragraph “RDS function” in section “Radio”).

When the CD-Changer (where fitted) is on, the number of the current CD, the track name or number and the track playing time are shown on the display.

“PHONE” will appear on the display when the telephone Mute function is on.

During NO MAP navigation it will be possible to play an audio CD using the internal player. In this case the display will show the number of the track being played and the playback time.

STOPPING NAVIGATION

Proceed as follows to interrupt navigation:

1) press ESC (**9**) or enter a new destination or recall the function for identifying the car position (see paragraph “Defining the car position” in this section). When pressing ESC (**9**), a navigation interruption confirmation message will appear on the display (**fig. 91**).

2) select YES by turning the knob/button (**11**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection.

WARNING The navigation data will be stored for 30 minutes if the system is switched off during active navigation. The navigation will start again during this period. After 30 minutes you will need to restore the route guidance data.

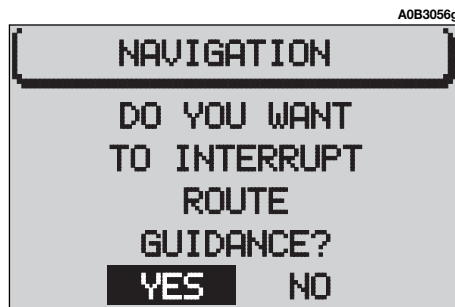


fig. 91

CHANGING THE AUDIO SOURCE

You can change the audio source during active navigation at any moment, proceed as follows:

- 1) press SRC (17)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required audio source (Radio or CD-Changer) (fig. 92): the display will show the main menu of the selected mode.
- 3) select another radio station or another track.

WARNING During active navigation the internal CD player cannot be used.

Press NAV (12) to return to active navigation.

TUNING THE RADIO

You can tune the radio directly during active navigation by pressing key (13 or 14).

WARNING To tune radio stations using multifunction keys (13 or 14) store the radio stations previously (see paragraph "Storing stations" in the "Radio" section).

NO MAP NAVIGATION

NO MAP navigation is carried out when the navigation CD is removed after entering the destination and starting navigation. The internal CD player can be used during NO MAP navigation for sound playback.

The message NO MAP will appear when the NO MAP function is on along with the straight distance to the destination.

WARNING It may take the system several minutes to correctly restore the car positioning data when the navigation CD is reinserted. During this time the message OFF ROAD or OFF MAP will appear on the display (the latter for insufficient positioning data). During this time, errors in detecting the car position may occur.



fig. 92

DYNAMIC TRAVEL GUIDE (where fitted)

When the “Dynamic travel guide” function is on, the system analyses and processes the traffic messages to calculate the route.

Traffic messages are broadcast by RDS stations with TMC service (Traffic Message Channel).

Proceed as follows to activate the “Dynamic travel guide” function:

1 during “Route guidance” press MEN (10). The display will show the main navigation menu (fig. 93)

2 turn the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE OPTION (fig. 94).

3 press the knob/button (11) to select ROUTE (fig. 95)

4 press repeatedly the knob/button (11) until the display shows DYN. (fig. 95)

5 use the knob/button (11) to select CONTINUE

6 press the knob/button (11).

The system will go back to “Route guidance” (see paragraph “Route guidance” in this section) and settings will stay unvaried until another setting is performed.

WARNING To activate the “Dynamic travel guide” during the “Route guidance”, the system shall tune to a TMC station. Should there be no TMC station stored on the FMC waveband, TMC station scanning will be started. Scanning may take several minutes since it is performed on the whole frequency range. During this period the radio is off.

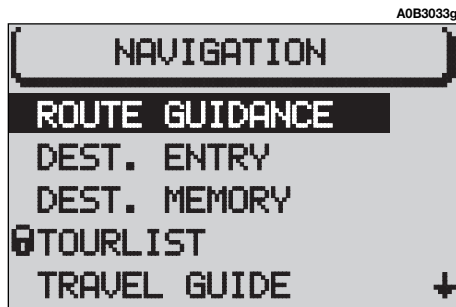


fig. 93

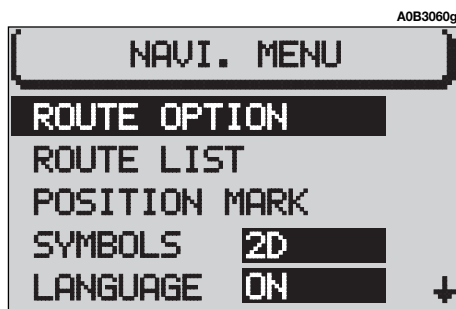


fig. 94

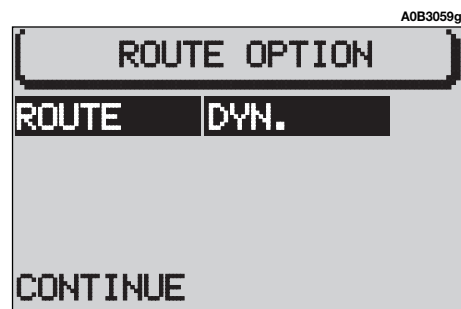


fig. 95

TOURIST GUIDE INFORMATION (where fitted)

Tourist information on the destinations can be recalled when using a navigation CD.

Information is contained in directories on the following topics: accommodation, restaurants, tourist information, amusements, etc. . .

The guide name will appear in the main navigation menu if there is only one guide (e.g.: MERIAN scout).

Proceed as follows:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display (**fig. 96**)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the tourist guide (e.g. TRAVEL GUIDE) in the main navigation menu (**fig. 96**)

If more than one guides are available on the CD, the display will show the guide list. Proceed as follows:

1) select the required tourist guide by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

3) enter the name of the town for which information is required with editing menu under DEST. ENTRY (see "Entering the destination" in section "Satellite navigation").

4) open the directory containing the required info

To start active navigation to a stored destination, keep the knob/button (**11**) pressed for over 2 seconds. The display will show another menu; use the knob/button (**11**) to select ROUTE GUIDANCE.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 96

ROUTE LIST

The display can show the route list TOURLIST calculated by the system.

Proceed as follows to display this information:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TOURLIST (**fig. 97**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**), to confirm, the display will show the list of available routes (**fig. 98**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 97

DESTINATION MEMORY

Destinations (current or previous) can be stored and customised with a short name.

Proceed as follows to store the required destination in the destination memory:

1) press NAV (**12**) to display the main navigation menu (**fig. 97**)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 99**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu (**fig. 100**)



fig. 98

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SAVE DEST. (**fig. 100**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The complete name of the entered destination is suggested as a name.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 99

Entering and editing destination names

Proceed as follows to edit or enter a name in the destination memory:

- 1) press NAV (12) to display the main navigation menu (fig. 99)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 99)
- 3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The DEST. MEMORY menu will appear on the display
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select EDIT MEMORY (fig. 101)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The editing menu will appear on the display

6) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (11)

7) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (11). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field. Repeat the last two operations to complete the name

8) press the knob/button (11) for over two seconds to confirm or select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

STORING STORED DESTINATIONS

You can sort the destination memory list. This list can be recalled when entering the destination.

Proceed as follows for storing:

- 1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select DEST. MEMORY (fig. 102)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu



fig. 100



fig. 101



fig. 102

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SORT DEST. (**fig. 103**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

6) select the destination to be moved by turning the knob/button (**11**)

7) confirm the selected destination by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

8) move the destination to the new position by turning the knob/button (**11**)

9) confirm the new position by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 103

DELETING STORED DATA

The last ten stored destinations, single destinations or all destination in memory can be deleted.

WARNING A navigation CD must be inserted in the drive to clear the memory.

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DEST. MEMORY (**fig. 102**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the DEST. MEMORY menu (**fig. 103**)

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CLEAR DEST. (**fig. 104**), then press the knob to confirm, the display will show the following options:

– LAST 10: delete the last ten destinations;

– SINGLE DEST.: delete a single destination;

– ALL DESTS: delete all destinations.

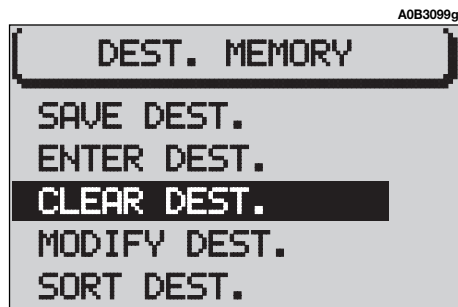


fig. 104

5) select the required option (LAST 10, SINGLE DEST., ALL DESTS) and confirm by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The memory will be automatically cleared for the first two options. Continue as follows for the third option:

6) select the destination to be deleted by turning the knob/button (**11**)

7) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**)

8) select CLEAR (to delete) or NO (not to delete) with the knob/button (**11**).

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

ENTERING AND EDITING DESTINATION SHORT NAMES

Proceed as follows to edit or enter a short name in the destination memory:

1) Press the NAV button (**12**). The main navigation menu will appear on the display

2) select DEST. MEMORY by turning the knob/button (**11**)

3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The DEST. MEMORY menu will appear on the display

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select MODIFY DEST. (**fig. 105**)

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the list of stored destinations in alphabetical order

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the destination name to be changed, the display will show the editing menu (speller)

7) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (**11**)

8) confirm the selected character by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected character will be displayed in the editing field

9) repeat the above procedure to complete the name

10) position the cursor on symbol **↵** and press the knob/button (**11**) or press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds.



fig. 105

GPS STATUS AND POSITION INFORMATION


Proceed as follows to display the number of GPS satellites which can be received and the car position:

- 1) Press the NAV button (12). The main navigation menu will appear on the display
- 2) select GPS STATUS by turning the knob/button (11)
- 3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

AVOIDING TAILBACKS DURING NAVIGATION

When active navigation is on, the system can detour tailbacks or road interruptions.

WARNING Only the options for which data is available on the navigation CD are offered. A lock symbol  will appear next to the unavailable options.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press T (8): the display will show the TRAFFIC menu (**fig. 106**)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select TR. JAM FUNCT.

3) the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 108**); use the knob/button (11) to select TRAFFIC AHEAD

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm; the display will show the TRAFFIC AHEAD menu and the cursor will move to TO (**fig. 108**)

5) press knob/button (11)

6) position the cursor on FROM with the knob/button (11)

7) use the knob/button (11) to specify the distance with respect to your position to start detour

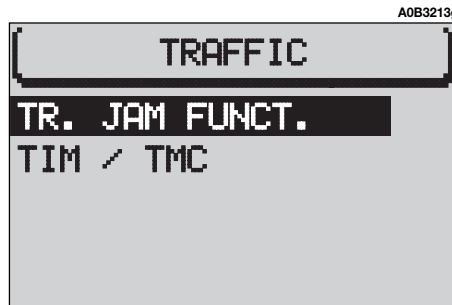


fig. 106



fig. 107

8) position the cursor on TO with the knob/button (**11**)

9) use the knob/button (**11**) to specify the distance with respect to your position to end detour

10) select OK with the knob/button (**11**). Press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The route guidance menu will appear on the display and the new route is recalculated. The message NEW CALC. will appear on the display

Proceed as follows to switch the function off:

1) press T (**8**): the display will show the TRAFFIC menu (**fig. 106**)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TR. JAM FUNCT.

3) the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 107**); turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TRAFFIC AHEAD

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm; the display will show the TRAFFIC AHEAD menu (**fig. 108**)

5) select CLEAR by the knob/button

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. The route will be recalculated

LOCKING A ROUTE SECTION WITHIN A ROUTE LIST

You can lock single road sections along the calculated route. This function is very useful when you receive information on heavy traffic, works in progress, etc. along your calculated route.

Proceed as follows:

1) press T (**8**): the display will show the TRAFFIC menu (**fig. 106**)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select TR. JAM FUNCT

3) the display will show the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 107**)



fig. 108

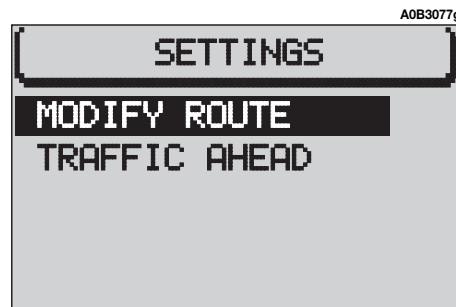


fig. 109

4) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select **MODIFY ROUTE (fig. 109)**; the display will show the route list where to lock the required route section

WARNING Long routes in which single short sections cannot be locked are marked with symbol “+”. To display short route sections, select items marked with symbol “+” and hold the knob/button pressed for longer than two seconds.

Short route sections which are not divided are marked with symbol “-”.

Route sections that cannot be locked (since an alternative route cannot be selected), are marked with symbol **⓪**.

5) use the knob/button **(11)** to select the first route section you want to delete from the list (it is better to select a long route)

6) press the knob/button **(11)**: a ring will be displayed in front of the selected route

7) turn the knob/button **(11)** until selecting the last route to delete from the list (it is better to select a long route)

8) press the knob/button **(11)**. The main navigation menu will appear on the display and a new route is calculated. The message **NEW CALC** will appear on the display.

Deleting/changing route lock

Proceed as follows:

1) press **T (8)**: the display will show the **TRAFFIC** menu **(fig. 106)**

2) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select **TR. JAM FUNCT.**

3) the display will show the **SETTINGS** menu

4) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select **MODIFY ROUTE (fig. 109)**; the display will show the clear or change options.

– to **clear** a route section, select **CLEAR**. The display will show the main navigation menu and new route will be calculated: the display shows **NEW CALC**.

– to **change** a route section, select **CHANGE** and repeat the operations listed in points **3)**, **4)**, **5)** and **6)** concerning route lock

CUSTOMISING THE ROUTE

Routes can be customised at any moment, even during navigation by entering the following parameters:

- **ROUTE:** you can choose between the fastest or shortest route or select the “Dynamic travel guide” (DYN.) with TMC (see paragraph “Dynamic travel guide” in this section). When this function is on, all the other options (MOTORWAY, FERRY and TOOL) are not displayed. The system tunes automatically to a TMC station and calculates the fastest/shortest route on the basis of the traffic messages;

- **MOTORWAY:** during navigation, you can choose whether to use motorways;

- **FERRY:** you can choose whether to use ferries;

- **TOOL:** you can exclude toll roads from the route.

WARNING For instance, setting MOTORWAY LESS (**fig. 111**), you avoid motorways but you have to cover long route sections, the system will therefore programme motorways in the calculated route. The same stands valid for FERRY and for TOOL roads.

Proceed as follows to select the route options:

- 1**) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the navigation setup menu

- 2**) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select ROUTE OPTION (**fig. 110**)

- 3**) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, the display will show the ROUTE OPTION menu (**fig. 111**)

- 4**) position the cursor on the required option with the knob/button (**11**)

- 5**) press the knob/button (**11**) to change the setting.

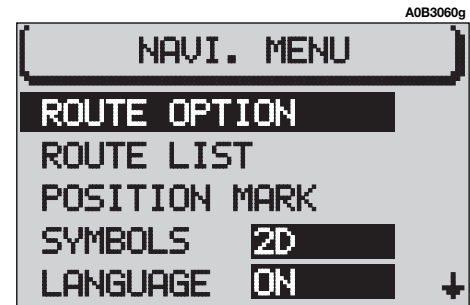


fig. 110

Proceed as follows to quit the route option menu:

1) press ESC (9), to go back to the navigation setup menu or use the knob/button (11) to move the cursor to CONTINUE (fig. 111)

2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm. If “Route guide” is not active the display will show the main navigation menu.

WARNING The system will automatically calculate a new route when the settings are changed during active navigation. The route options will be active until they are changed again.

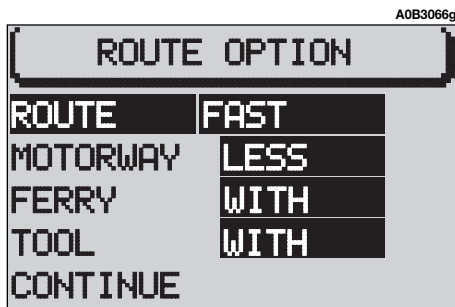


fig. 111

DEFINING THE CAR POSITION

This function can be used to display the current position of the car (example: the name of the street you are driving along) and the north-up indication. Route guidance will be interrupted when the function is on.

Proceed as follows to define the current position:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select LOCATING (fig. 112)

3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to end the function and return to the main navigation menu.



fig. 112

Storing the position

Proceed as follows to store the current position:

1) press the MEN button (10) to open the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select POSITION MARK (fig. 113)

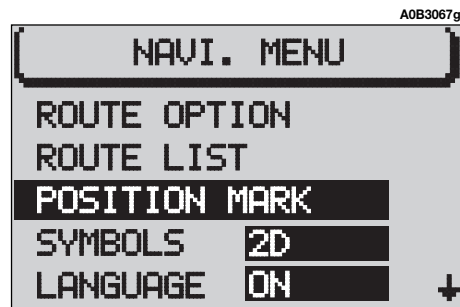


fig. 113

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm, then select NAME to store it. The display will show the editing menu (**fig. 114**) to enter the position name

4) position the cursor on the required character by turning the knob/button (**11**)

5) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The selected character will appear in the editing field

6) confirm the short name by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds

7) repeat the same operations for the other characters

8) confirm the name by pressing the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds or by selecting the ↵ symbol and confirming.

WARNING This procedure can only be carried out with a navigation CD inserted in the drive.

The entered name will automatically be transferred to the destination memory.

Proceed as follows if you do not want to assign a short name to the current position:

1) select CONTINUE with the knob/button (**11**) instead of NAME (as described above)

2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**). The display will return to the main menu without saving the name.

RECEIVING TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENTS DURING NAVIGATION

You can listen to traffic announcements during navigation. This option can be switched on and off regardless of the sound source.

To switch this function on/off press TA (**4**).

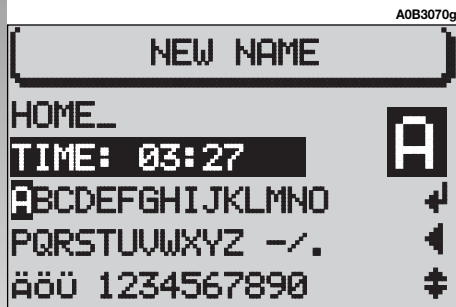


fig. 114

SWITCHING VOICE MESSAGES ON AND OFF

Route guidance consists of voice messages. The voice messages provide information on the distances to be travelled before turning.

The voice messages can be switched on and off:

1) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select LANGUAGE (**fig. 115**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to display ON (voice messages on) or OFF (voice messages off). The default setting is ON.

SWITCHING THE LAST 10 DESTINATION MEMORY ON AND OFF

The last ten destinations can be stored. With this function, you can automatically store the last ten destinations.

Proceed as follows to switch the last ten destination memory on and off:

1) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select LAST 10 (**fig. 116**)

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to display ON or OFF. The default setting is ON

4) press ESC (**9**) to quit the navigation menu.

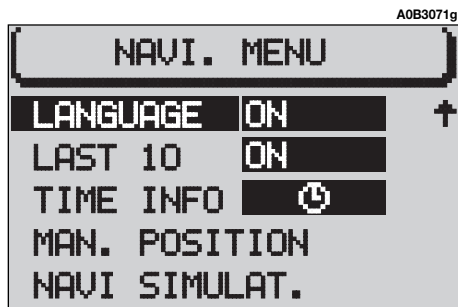


fig. 115

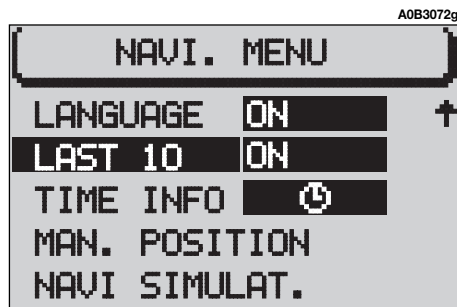


fig. 116

SWITCHING ROUTE TIME INFORMATION ON AND OFF

This function enables to select the time required to reach the destination and the estimated and exact time of arrival.

Proceed as follows to switch the route time information on and off:

- 1) press MEN (10) the display will show the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select TIME INFO (fig. 117)

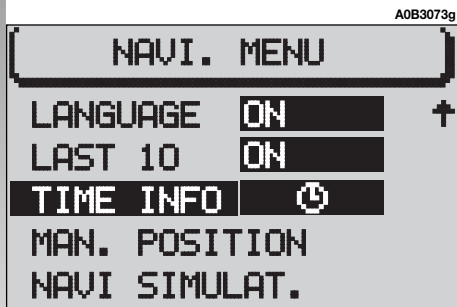


fig. 117

3) press the knob/button (11) to select ⌚ (exact time of arrival) ⌚ (time to reach destination) or ⌚ (estimated time of arrival).

Press ESC (9) to switch the function off and return to the main navigation menu.

MANUAL POSITION INDICATION

The system enables to indicate the current car position manually, when the GPS signal cannot be received.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press the MEN button (10) to open the navigation setup menu
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select MAN. POSITION (fig. 118)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the editing menu. Fill in the required data in the following order: city, street, intersection (see "Entering the destination name" in section "Satellite navigation")

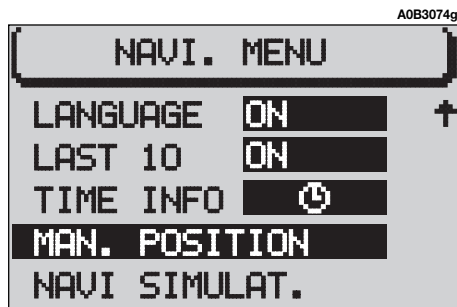


fig. 118

4) after completing the above operation, press the knob/button (11) for over 2 seconds to confirm or select symbol (↵) and confirm: the display will show the main navigation menu.

WARNING Certain road intersections (e.g. straight road intersection with loop road) are not suitable for indicating the car position.

NAVIGATION SIMULATION

The system can simulate a trip. The system simulates navigation by providing realistic visual instructions, voice messages and acoustic signals.

Proceed as follows to start a simulation:

1) press the MEN button (10) to open the navigation setup menu

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select NAVI SIMULAT. (fig. 119)

3) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11). The simulation will be started

4) use the knob/button (11) to select ROUND TRIP or ONE WAY on the main navigation menu

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm; the display will show the navigation menu. The message "DEMO" (fig. 120) will appear on the display.

6) enter destination (see "Entering the destination" in section "Satellite navigation").

WARNING The simulation will automatically end when the set destination is reached or when a real navigation is started.

WARNING If GPS positioning is not possible, enter the position by hand. NO MAP navigation is not possible during the simulation.



fig. 119



fig. 120

TARGASYS SERVICES

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Connect Nav system provides a set of functions enabling to receive, from the **Targasys** contact centre, useful information (e.g. hotel, closest workshop) or to send a request for assistance.

With all these functions your geographical position is automatically given to the assistance centre. The necessary condition to establish your exact position is reception of at least 3 GPS satellites. The number of received satellites is shown on the display.

Furthermore, with the “**Follow me**”, function you can be updated on the traffic situation along your way.

Updating intervals can be changed as described in paragraph “Setting the interval for updating the distance covered” in this section).

Targasys services (INFOMOBILITY, MEDICAL ADVICE, ROAD ASSIST.) shall be requested by voice connection.

After voice request, an message will be sent to the **Targasys** contact centre that will recall the user immediately after. Required info will therefore be received (also through SMS).

If not deleted the information received (max. 20) will be stored.

The necessary conditions to use the telematic services are the following:

- valid SIM card for **Targasys** Contact Centre connection

- activation of pay services run by **Targasys** (INFOMOBILITY, MEDICAL ADVICE, ROAD ASSIST.).

WARNING If the user has not yet subscribed to the pay services run by **Targasys**, the associated menu functions are inactive. During subscription you will be given the activation and deactivation procedures of the Telematic Services offered by **Targasys**.

WARNING Access to **Targasys** è Telematic services is linked to the terminal activation and to the telephone operator profile activation of the SIM card inserted in the system. If a SIM card and a telephone operator with no profile activated are used, it is necessary to request **Targasys** for a new activation. The system can manage 5 different profiles.

WARNING Before requesting this function, get familiar with the other functions, i.e.: Radio, CD-Changer (where fitted), Navigation and Telephone.

When no SIM card has been inserted and you press **☎** (7) it will possible to call the emergency service number **112**.

Instead, if a valid SIM card is inserted, but there is no **Targasys** subscription, pressing **☎** (7) will activate the PERS. NUMBER function.

WARNING “112” is the emergency call service for all countries in which this public service is available. The “**Emergency 112**” call can always be activated, even if the telephone card is not inserted in the slot. The “Emergency112” call can be made at any moment also with the telephone. The activation of calls for assistance is subordinate to whether the cell phone is working and correctly supplied electrically. Therefore in the event of accidents or damage to the car it might not be available. Moreover, you must be in a place covered by the GSM 900 network and there should be enough field signal intensity.

WARNING Make “112” emergency calls only when there is a real emergency. Emergency call misuse is liable to punishment.

After service activation, pressing **C** (7) will display the main **Targasys** menu with the following options (**fig. 121**):

- **Infomobility**
- **Medical advice**
- **Road Assist.**

ENABLING PHONE/SIM CARD

When the system is switched on for the first time and you want to use **Targasys** services, request activation to the **Targasys** service centre.

Every SIM card shall be authorised to access the **Targasys** service in order to prevent unauthorised use of these services. new authorisation is not required when using a SIM card of the same network.

To enable the SIM card the following data are required:

- system serial number
- SIM card telephone number that you want to use for **Targasys** services

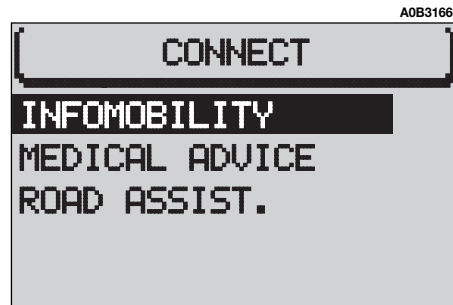


fig. 121

The serial number can be found in the CONNECT CODE menu (**fig. 122**) (see “Recalling the phone code number (serial number)” in this section).

WARNING Targasys contact service numbers will be provided together with the system.

ENTERING THE TARGASYS NUMBER

To activate the required functions and setting the system, proceed as follows:

1) press **Ⓢ** (**7**): since the system is not on yet and no SIM card profile has been entered, the display will show a message specifying that after 20 seconds the **112** emergency call will be started.

2) press ESC (**9**) to display the INFO-MOBILITY menu (**fig. 123**)

3) press MEN (**10**)

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select NEW PROFILE (**fig. 124**)

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will ask for dialling the **Targasys** centre number (**Targasys** number)

6) use the speller to dial the number

7) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm. you will be asked whether you want to be connected to the entered number



fig. 122

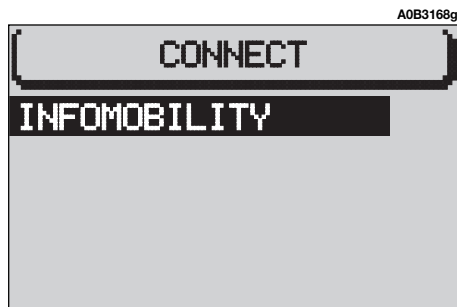


fig. 123



fig. 124

8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm and to start a call to **Targasys**.

Once connected to the **Targasys** service centre, follow the operator's instructions (who will ask you the system code number and the SIM card telephone number).

The system will thus be enabled.

ENTERING THE PERSONAL NUMBER

The PERS. NUMBER is the phone number used by the system when one of the **Targasys** service is enabled but the SIM card profile or the operator profile is not enabled yet. The PERS. NUMBER can also be used when the **Targasys** services are disabled but a SIM profile relevant to inserted SIM card is still valid.

This could take place when the User enables, disables or suspends the **Targasys** services. The PERS. NUMBER can be called anyway.

To enter the personal number apply the following procedure:

- 1)** press **☎ (7)** button
- 2)** press **MEN (10)** button
- 3)** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select **PERS. NUMBER (fig. 125)**
- 4)** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm and enter the personal number
- 5)** use the speller to enter the personal number
- 6)** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

When a personal number has already been stored, it is shown on the display. To change the personal number proceed as follows:

- 1)** press the knob/button (**11**)
- 2)** use the speller to enter the new number

Otherwise press **ESC (9)**.



fig. 125

RESET

If the car changes owner, it is necessary to delete all the system information and to restore the manufacturer's default parameters.

WARNING When activating the RESET function, any Infomobility message received will be cleared.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7) button
- 2) press MEN (10) button
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select PERS. NUMBER (fig. 126)
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask if you really want to reset parameters



fig. 126

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, otherwise press ESC (9). In both cases, after pressing the buttons, the display will show the Connect functions menu (fig. 126) again.

It is also possible to reset the system making use of the **Targasys** service.

In this case all SIM profiles and the system activation are cleared, while received Infomobility messages will not be deleted.

To reset the system according to the last method mentioned, you need to contact and inform the **Targasys** service centre that you wish to reset the system.

CONNECT NAV USE

Once the system and the related SIM card have been activated by the **Targasys** service centre, according to the above mentioned procedures, you can use every Connect Nav telematic function.

Phone and SIM card state can be seen in the menu (see "Recalling the phone state function" and "Displaying available SIM profiles" in this section).

No additional cost is charged when the **Targasys** service centre calls you back.

“MEDICAL ADVICE” SERVICE (STARTING AN EMERGENCY CALL)

This function forwards your request directly to the **Targasys** service centre and not to the nearest emergency centre (by the “Emergency 112” call) as it is done usually. In this way the message calling for medical assistance is forwarded to the **Targasys** operator completed with the position of the car to allow it to be located and therefore the required actions will be immediately started.

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

This function is particularly useful to locate the car position when you are not able to identify it exactly.

WARNING In order to have your position sent correctly you must receive at least 3 GPS satellites. The number of received satellites can be read on the display next to the satellite symbol. Should signal reception be not strong enough at request activation, **Targasys** will consider the last detected valid position.

You can also decide whether to send the emergency call: **automatically** 20 seconds after selecting MEDICAL ADVICE (**fig. 127**) or **manually** using the knob/button (**11**). In the latter case, when you select MEDICAL ADVICE, the system will ask you for confirmation. Press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

WARNING Use the MEDICAL ADVICE function only in case of emergency. In other situations (e.g. road assistance) use the specific function.

WARNING The “Emergency 112” call can be made at any moment also with the telephone. “112” is the emergency call service for all countries in which this public service is available. The “**Emergency 112**” call can always be activated, even if the telephone card is not inserted in the GSM module (**21-fig. 3**) set inside the glovebox on passenger’s side or if the phone is not enabled.

The activation of the “**112 Emergency**” MEDICAL ADVICE calls is subordinate to whether the cell phone is working and correctly supplied electrically. Therefore in the event of accidents or damage car it might not be available. Moreover, you must be in a place covered by the Dual Band network and there should be enough field signal intensity.

According to the phone and SIM card state, when requesting the MEDICAL ADVICE, the following could take place:

– **Targasys** services not enabled or SIM card not recognised: emergency call is directly forwarded to the international number “112”,

– **Targasys** services enabled and SIM card not recorded: emergency call is forwarded to the personal number stored according to the procedure described in the previous paragraph “Entering the personal number”.

– **Targasys** services not enabled and SIM card enabled: emergency call is forwarded to the personal number stored according to the procedure described in paragraph “Entering the personal number”.

According to the selected setting, this function can be activated in “Automatic” or “Manual” mode (see next paragraphs).

WARNING Make “112” emergency calls only when there is a real emergency. Emergency call misuse is liable to punishment.

Manual activation

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select MEDICAL ADVICE (fig. 127)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the emergency call will be then forwarded to **Targasys** contact centre.
- 5) press ESC (9) to interrupt.

Automatic activation

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7)
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select MEDICAL ADVICE (fig. 127)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show a message specifying that the emergency call will be started after about 20 seconds. The remaining time is shown on the display and when it expires the request will be automatically forwarded to the **Targasys** contact centre.
- 4) press ESC (9) to interrupt the call before time expiring

WARNING After starting the emergency call, a message (SMS) will be sent to the **Targasys** contact centre that will call you back as soon as possible.

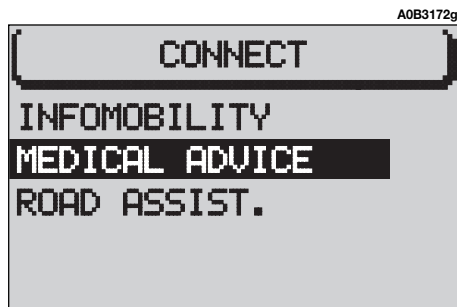


fig. 127

Selecting the emergency call mode

This function shall be used to choose how to forward the emergency call: (“Manual activation”) by pressing the knob/button (11) to confirm, or (“Automatic activation”) after 20 seconds.

The default setting is “Manual activation”.

To select the required mode, proceed as follows:

- 1) press **☉** (7) button
- 2) press MEN (10) button
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select MODE (fig. 128)
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the currently active mode and will ask if you want to change it
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to change mode, otherwise press ESC (9)

“ROAD ASSISTANCE” SERVICE

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.

Selecting and activating this function, a message calling for road assistance is sent to the **Targasys** contact centre, completed with the position of the car to allow it to be located.

After sending the assistance request, the **Targasys** operator will call you back as soon as possible.

To forward the request for road assistance apply the following procedure:

- 1) press **☉** (7) button
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to display ROAD ASSIST. (fig. 129)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm call forwarding, otherwise press ESC (9)



fig. 128

According to system and SIM card state when requesting the ROAD ASSIST., the same conditions as those previously described for MEDICAL ADVICE could take place (see previous pages).

WARNING After starting the emergency call, a message (SMS) will be sent to the **Targasys** contact centre that will call you back as soon as possible.

Calls for medical advice or road assistance

For both MEDICAL ADVICE and ROAD ASSIST., if transmission of the telematic call to **Targasys** centre is not successful, a warning message appears on the display asking the user if he/she wants to call the **Targasys** (*) centre anyway to communicate the need for assistance (call will be forwarded only if that area is covered by the GSM 900/1800 network) (**).

(*) In this case the operating centre will no longer be able to locate the car.

(**) The call will be made using a tollfree number. In particular situations the Customer might be charged with the call according to the type of telephone operator used or the roaming conditions.

INFOMOBILITY SERVICES

To access the INFOMOBILITY services, proceed as follows:

- 1) press **☉** (**7**) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 130**);
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select INFOMOBILITY (**fig. 130**);
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm;
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CONNECT (**fig. 131**);
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

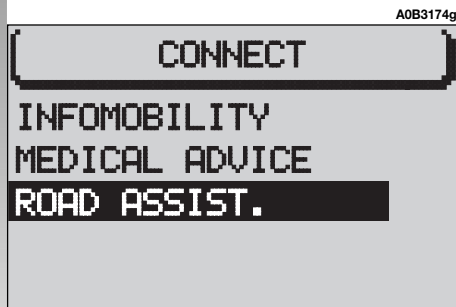


fig. 129

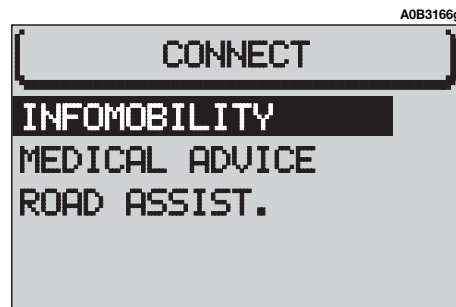


fig. 130

The **Targasys** operator will call you back as soon as possible to give you the required information (e.g.: the closest hotel, restaurant, etc ...) and, if required, he/she will send a message with route indications to reach destination.

Available functions (**fig. 131**) are:

- **Connect**
- **Follow me**
- **Message list**

These pay services run by **Targasys** are available only upon subscription. If the user has not yet subscribed to them or subscription has expired, the associated functions will be disabled and the display will show a warning message.

The user can call the **Targasys** operator by phone to have information regarding his/her subscription and reactivate the service, if required.

If subscription has expired, it is still possible to consult stored information.

INFOMOBILITY functions are described in the following paragraphs.

“FOLLOW ME” FUNCTION

The FOLLOW ME function is used to receive at regular intervals traffic information from the **Targasys** operator and to be updated by the **Targasys** centre on any queue along your route.

It is also possible to select the traffic update frequency and to automatically inform the **Targasys** Contact Center on the distance covered, in order to select relevant traffic information.

This function is available only if **Targasys** services are enabled and the SIM card used is properly configured with a service profile.



fig. 131

To activate the FOLLOW ME function apply the following procedure:

- 1) press **C** (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 130**);
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select **INFOMOBILITY** (**fig. 130**);
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select **FOLLOW ME** (**fig. 132**);
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

6) turn the knob/button (11) to select **START** (**fig. 133**);

7) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation

8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the FOLLOW ME function otherwise press **ESC** (9). After confirming the request the **Targasys** operator will call you back as soon as possible.

WARNING When turning the system on, if the FOLLOW ME function is enabled, press **C** (7), and the request to end the service appears automatically.

Setting the interval for updating the distance covered

This function shall be used to set the interval for receiving information concerning the FOLLOW ME function from the **Targasys** contact centre.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 130**);
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select **INFOMOBILITY** (**fig. 130**);
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select **FOLLOW ME** (**fig. 132**);

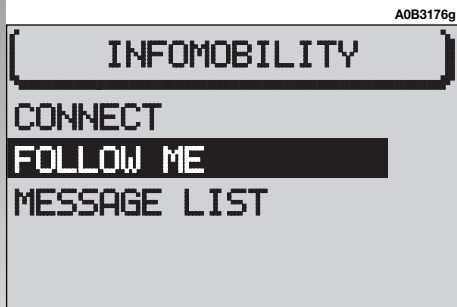


fig. 132

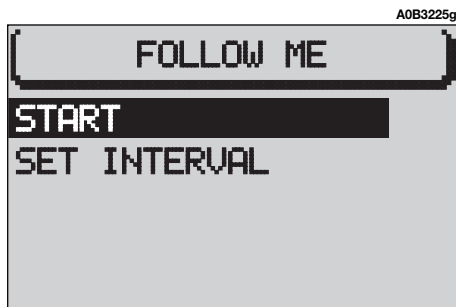


fig. 133

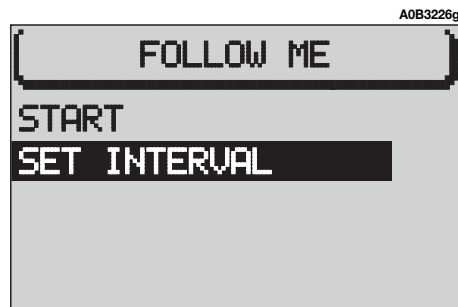


fig. 134

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

6) turn the knob/button (16) to select SET INTERVAL (fig. 134)

7) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

8) turn the knob/button (11) to select one of the following settings (fig. 135) (referred to the interval for sending the car position):

NEVER: the car position will never be forwarded

LOW: the car position will be updated every 130 Km

REGULAR: the car position will be updated every 70 Km

FREQUENT: the car position will be updated every 35 Km

9) after selecting the required setting press the knob/button (11) to confirm otherwise press ESC (9) to go back to the screen shown in (fig. 134).

Displaying/deleting received information

When a message from the **Targasys** operator is received, the display will show a message. Press the knob/button (11) to read it immediately.

Press ESC (9) to read it later: the message will be stored.

All messages will be stored (up to a maximum of 20) until they are cleared. Moreover, if the message contains a telephone number (e.g. hotel), it is possible to call it directly.

If the message contains information for locating a destination, the straight line distance and direction are given.

WARNING All **Targasys** messages containing service information are just displayed and not stored.

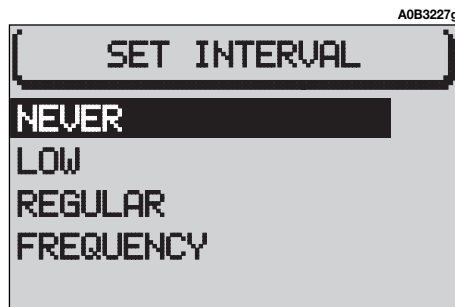


fig. 135

Displaying stored messages

To display stored messages, proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 127**);
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select **INFOMOBILITY** (**fig. 127**);
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select **MESSAGE LIST** (**fig. 136**);
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

The display will show the list of stored messages. The upper line will show message reception date and time and the lower line will show the first 12 characters of the message (**fig. 134**).

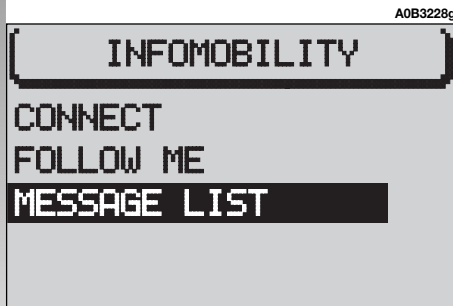


fig. 136

6) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required message

7) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the entire message.

Use the knob/button (11) to scroll the messages quickly.

If the message contains a telephone number or the destination position, at the end of the message **PHONE NUMBER** and/or **POSITION** will be displayed

After reading the message, press **ESC** (9) to go back to the stored message list.



fig. 137

Deleting a message

Proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the involved message according to the sequence described in the previous paragraph;
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select **DELETE** at the end of the message
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show again the list of stored messages.

Press **ESC** (9) to not delete the message.

How to call a telephone number contained in a message

To call a phone number contained in a message (e.g.: the number of a hotel or a restaurant) proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the involved message according to the sequence described in paragraph "Displaying stored messages"
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select PHONE NUMBER at the end of the message
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to start the call, otherwise press ESC (9).

Displaying the position of the destination contained in a message

To display the position of the destination contained in a message (e.g.: hotel or restaurant), proceed as follows:

- 1) recall the involved message according to the sequence described in paragraph "Displaying stored messages" in this section
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select POSITION at the end of the message
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the screen in (fig. 138)

DISTANCE: refers to the straight line distance to the required destination;

DIRECTION: an arrow shows the straight line direction to be followed for locating the required destination

Press the knob/button (11) or ESC (9) to go back to the previous screen.

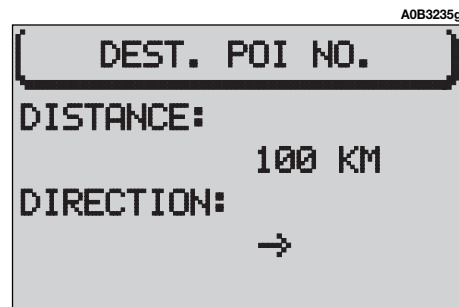


fig. 138

RECALLING THE PHONE CODE NUMBER (serial number)

The phone serial number is essential to do the following:

- activate the phone;
- enable the SIM card.

To display the serial number, proceed as follows:

- 1) press **C** (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 130**)
- 2) press ESC (9) and then MEN (10)
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select CONNECT CODE (**fig. 139**)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the serial number (**fig. 140**)

Press the knob/button (11) or ESC (9) to quit and go back to the Connect menu (**fig. 139**).

RECALLING THE PHONE "STATE" FUNCTION

In order to know if your phone can access the **Targasys** services apply the following procedure:

- 1) press **C** (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (**fig. 130**)
- 2) press ESC (9) and then MEN (10)
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select STATE (**fig. 141**)



fig. 139



fig. 140

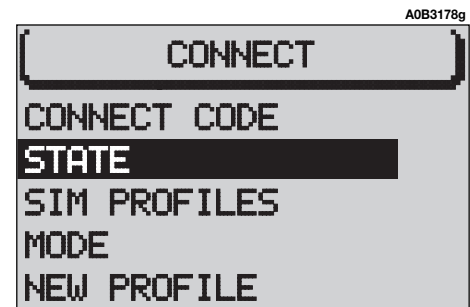


fig. 141

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the phone state (fig. 142):

ENABLED: phone enabled to access **Targasys** services

DISABLED: phone not enabled to access **Targasys** services.

Press the knob/button (11) or ESC (9) to quit and go back to the Connect menu (fig. 139).

DISPLAYING AVAILABLE SIM PROFILES

It is possible to display SIM profiles (max. 5) stored in the system and related SIM card numbers.

Proceed as follows:

1) press (C) (7) to display the **Targasys** service menu (fig. 130)

2) press ESC (9) and then MEN (10)

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select SIM PROFILES (fig. 143)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the stored SIM profiles. The currently active profile is indicated by the cursor >> (fig. 144):

Press the knob/button (11) or ESC (9) to quit and go back to the Connect menu (fig. 139).

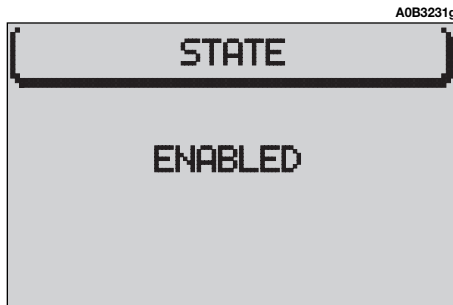


fig. 142



fig. 143



fig. 144

TELEPHONE

GENERAL INFORMATION

This telephone can be used to make the same telephone connections of a portable cellular phone. Therefore, to make a telephone call you need a SIM card and you must be in a place served by the GSM 900/1800 network, with enough signal intensity.

WARNING The network services described in this section (e.g. incoming call) are managed by the telephone, but their availability depends on the network and the type of contract agreed with the network provider.

WARNING If power supply is lower than the minimum preset threshold, phone call quality is not assured. For this reason, turning the engine on during a telephone call might interrupt it.

TURNING THE PHONE ON

To activate the phone, if a valid SIM card has been inserted, press **↵ (15)**.

The display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 145**)

Displayed symbols mean the following:

Y: GSM network connection

✉: mailbox (messages received and not read)

||||: GSM signal field intensity



fig. 145

ENTERING THE PIN CODE

The PIN (Personal Identification Number) code prevent unauthorised use of SIM card services.

PIN and PUK (Personal Unlock Key) codes are communicated to you when you buy the SIM card.

The PIN code can be deactivated or changed (see "Changing the PIN code" in this section).

WARNING Write down the PIN code and keep it in a safe place.

When the display shows PIN CODE proceed as follows:

1) use the speller to enter the PIN code starting from the first digit


2) select symbol **↵** and then press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: press at length the last selected digit to confirm PIN code entry.

WARNING After three unsuccessful PIN code entries, the SIM card is locked. To unlock the SIM card, enter the PUK code (see paragraph “SIM card unlocking” in this section).


After entering the correct PIN code, the system will turn on to the last source selected (Radio, CD or CD-Changer, where fitted) and the main phone menu (**fig. 145**) will be displayed.

CHANGING THE PIN CODE

To change the PIN code, proceed as follows:

- 1) press  (15) to turn the phone mode on
- 2) press MEN (10): the display will show the phone Setup menu (**fig. 146**)
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select PIN CODE (**fig. 146**)
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for change confirmation
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to change the PIN code otherwise press ESC (9)

6) enter the new PIN code (starting from the first digit), turning the knob/button (11) until moving the cursor to the required digit (**fig. 147**).

7) after entering the PIN code, select symbol  and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm

8) confirm by entering the PIN code again and then repeat the operations described in the previous point: the display will show the phone setup menu (**fig. 145**)

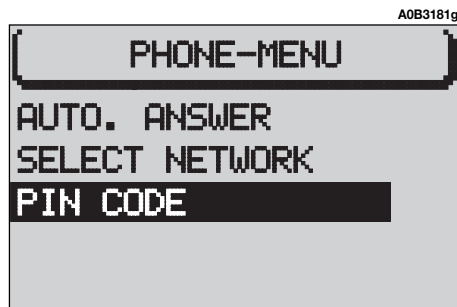


fig. 146

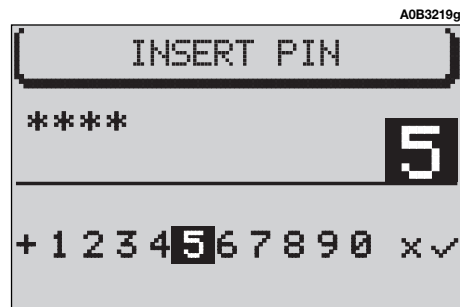


fig. 147

SIM CARD UNLOCKING

After three unsuccessful PIN code entries, the SIM card is locked. To unlock the SIM card, enter the PUK code (Personal Unlock Key).

The eight-digit PUK code is communicated when buying the SIM card.

WARNING The PUK code cannot be changed.

When inserting a locked SIM card inside the GSM module, the display will show an error message and ask you to enter the PUK code. To enter the PUK code press the knob/button (11).



fig. 148

Entering the PUK code

Proceed as follows:

1) use the speller (**fig. 148**) to enter the PUK code, starting from the first digit

2) after entering the PUK code, select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask you to enter the PIN code;

3) enter the code and then press the knob/button (11): the display will show the following screen (**fig. 149**);

4) enter the PIN code again and then press the knob/button (11).



fig. 149

VOLUME ADJUSTMENT

The ringer and conversation tone volume can be adjusted as required.

Proceed as follows:

– turn the knob/button (16) to the left to lower the volume

– turn the knob/button (16) to the right to increase the volume



fig. 150

Adjusting the ringing tone volume

Proceed as follows:

1 from the Radio menu, press twice MEN (**10**): the display will show the menu in (fig. 150)

2 turn the knob/button (**11**) to select VOLUME (fig. 150)

3 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the volume set-up menu (fig. 151)

4 turn the knob/button (**11**) to select PHONE (fig. 151)

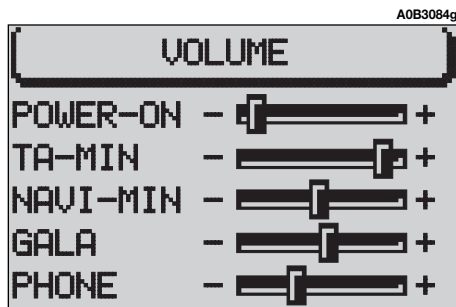


fig. 151

5 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the volume adjustment levels

6 turn the knob/button (**11**) to adjust the volume level as required

7 press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm adjustment. The required volume level will be stored

8 press ESC (**9**) three times or press ↶ (**11**)

WARNING With volume level set to **0** the ringer is excluded and therefore incoming calls will only be shown on the display.



fig. 152

SELECTING PHONE NUMBERS

A phone number can be selected choosing one of the following three options:

- manual selection
- selection of a number from the list of last called numbers
- selection of a number from the phone book

Manual selection

Proceed as follows:

1 press (**14**) relevant to CALL (fig. 152): the display will show the screen in (fig. 153)

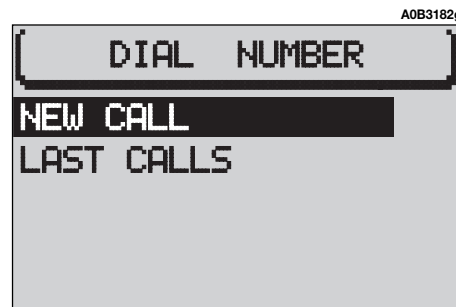


fig. 153

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select NEW CALL (fig. 153)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the speller to dial the required number (fig. 154)

4) use the speller to dial the required number: after dialling the number, select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm

Call to the dialled number will be started.

WARNING When using a GSM network it is always necessary to dial the relevant area code before dialling the number, even when calling a mobile phone. Only service numbers and mailbox numbers can be dialled without the area code.



fig. 154

Selecting a number from the list of last called numbers

Proceed as follows:

1) press (14) relevant to CALL (fig. 152): the display will show the screen in (fig. 153)

2) turn the knob/button (11) to select LAST CALLS (fig. 155)

3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the list of the last called numbers (fig. 156)

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required number

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

Call to the selected number will be started.



fig. 155

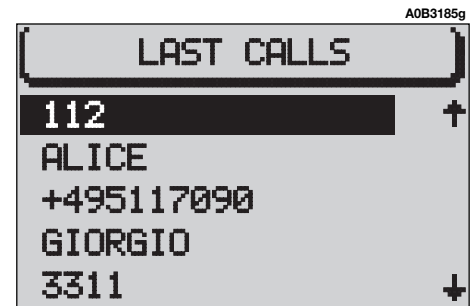


fig. 156

SELECTING A NUMBER FROM THE PHONE BOOK

Applying the following procedure will make it possible to call a number previously stored in the phone book.

Search name

Proceed as follows:

1) press **(13)** relevant to BOOK (**fig. 152**): the display will show the phone book menu (**fig. 157**)

2) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select SEARCH NAME (**fig. 157**)

3) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm: the display will show the speller to enter the name corresponding to the phone number you want to call (**fig. 158**)

4) use the speller to enter the name

5) select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm

6) the phone book will display the entered name

7) use the knob/button **(11)** to confirm the name, if required

8) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm

Call to the selected number will be started.

“Scrolling” the phone book

Proceed as follows:

1) press **(13)** relevant to BOOK (**fig. 152**): the display will show the phone book menu (**fig. 157**)

2) turn the knob/button **(11)** to select SHOW PHONEBOOK (**fig. 159**)



fig. 157

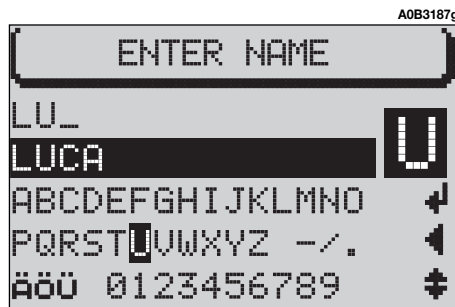


fig. 158



fig. 159

3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the first number of the phone book (**fig. 160**)

4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required name; then press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

Call to the select number will be started.

Should the list be not displayed completely, move the cursor to ↓ and then press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

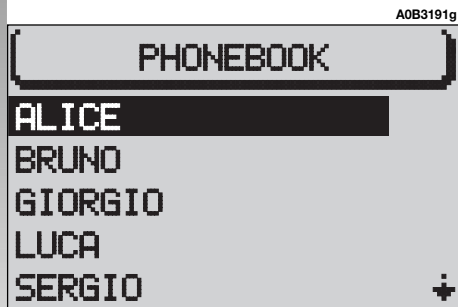


fig. 160

INCOMING CALLS

Incoming calls are signalled by the sound of a ringer and a message on the display.

Manual answer

To answer a call manually, press ↶ (**15**) or press the knob/button (**11**).

WARNING The ringer can be excluded (see paragraph “Adjusting the ringing tone volume”).

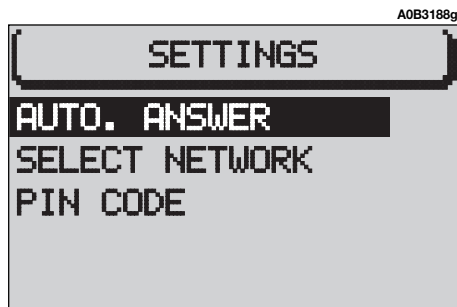


fig. 161

Automatic answer

Automatic answer after the third phone ring can be set.

Proceed as follows:

1) press ↶ (**15**) to activate the phone mode

2) press MEN (**10**): the display will show the phone setup menu

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select AUTO. ANSWER (**fig. 161**)

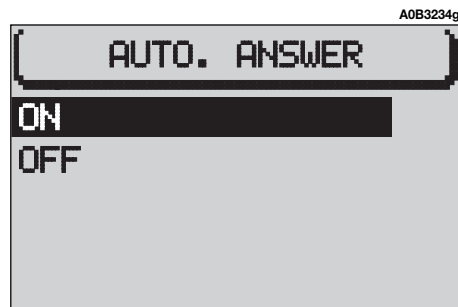


fig. 162

4) turn the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (fig. 162)

5) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required setting (ON or OFF)


6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the phone set-up menu.

Refusing a call

To refuse a call, press ESC (9).

The caller will hear the busy line signal.

Ending a call

To end a call, press  (15).

Redialling

Using the list of last called number it is possible to redial a number (see "Selecting a number from the list of last called numbers" in this section).

TELEPHONE CALLS TO FOREIGN COUNTRIES

The GSM international standard enables to call foreign countries.

The prerequisite is the existence of a roaming agreement between providers.

Check that your network provider allows to use the SIM card in roaming conditions.

The network provider can provide you with the list of countries having local network providers and the different tariffs.

WARNING To call abroad contact immediately your network provider and remember that your SIM card shall be enabled for calls in roaming conditions.

Proceed as follows:

1) dial the international dialling code of the required country

2) dial the area code **without dialling** the first “0” and then dial the phone number

WARNING the first two figures of the international dialling code can be replaced by symbol “+”

Example

International code of the required country:	0039	Italy
Area dialling code:	011	Torino
Phone number:	12...	Office
Dialled number:	+391112706..	

When you are abroad

Who calls you from your country of origin can dial the number without international code.

Who calls you from a country different from that of origin must dial the international code of your country.

When calling a fix phone number, dial first the area dialling code and then the phone number, the international code is not required.

SELECTING THE NETWORK

This function shall be used for selecting another network (not the GSM one), provided that there is a roaming agreement between your provider and other providers. A list with preferred radio stations can also be selected.

This is particularly useful when you have to stay abroad for long periods since the tariffs of the various network providers can be very different.

Selecting the network manually

Use this function for selecting manually the required network.

Proceed as follows:

1) press **↶ (15)** to activate the phone mode

2) press **MEN (10)**: the display will show the phone setup menu

3) turn the knob/button **(11)** to choose **SELECT NETWORK (fig. 163)**

4) press the knob/button **(11)** to confirm: the display will show the following screen **(fig. 164)**

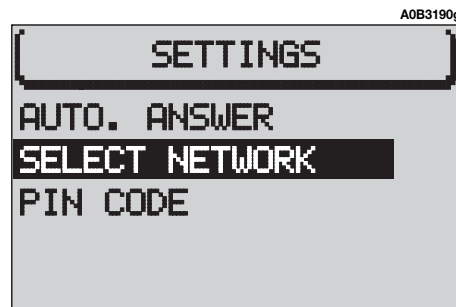


fig. 163

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to choose SELECTABLE NET (**fig. 164**)

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 165**)

7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select MANUAL (**fig. 165**)

8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 166**)

9) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select AVAIL. NETWORKS (**fig. 166**): the display will show how the list of available networks

10) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required network

11) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection

Should there be no agreement between your provider and the selected one, access will be refused and a dedicated warning message will be displayed: select another network!.

Selecting the network automatically

Use this function for selecting automatically the best network available.

Proceed as follows:

1) press **↶** (**15**) to activate the phone mode

2) press MEN (**10**): the display will show the phone setup menu

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to choose SELECT NETWORK (**fig. 163**)

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 164**)

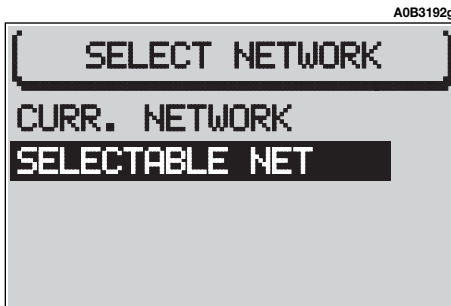


fig. 164

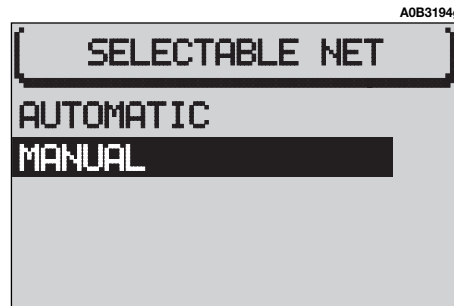


fig. 165

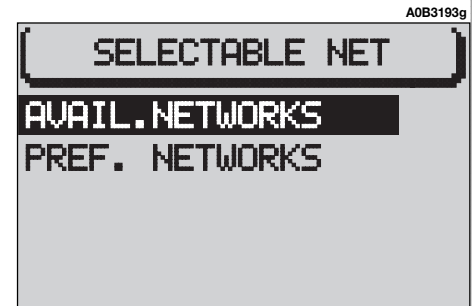


fig. 166

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SELECTABLE NET (**fig. 164**)

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 167**)

7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select AUTOMATIC (**fig. 167**)

8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the best network available will be selected.

Selecting a network from the list of the available networks

Use this function to select a network manually from the list of the available networks.

Proceed as follows:

1) press **↶** (**15**) to activate the phone mode

2) press MEN (**10**): the display will show the phone setup menu

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to choose SELECT NETWORK (**fig. 163**)

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SELECTABLE NET (**fig. 164**)

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 167**)

7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select MANUAL (**fig. 165**)

8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 168**)

9) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select PREF. NETWORKS (**fig. 168**)



fig. 167

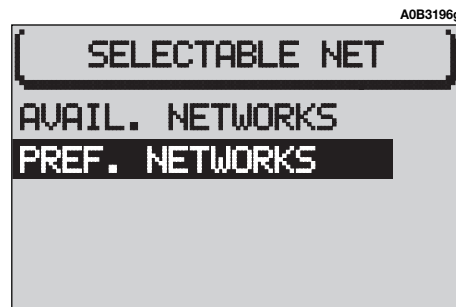


fig. 168

10) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the list of the available networks

11) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required network

12) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm the selection


Should the selected network be not available (e.g.: overload or poor signal), the display will show a dedicated warning message.

In this case another network shall be selected.

Displaying the selected network

Use this function to display the selected network.

Proceed as follows:

1) press  (**15**) to activate the phone mode

2) press MEN (**10**): the display will show the phone setup menu

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to choose SELECT NETWORK (**fig. 163**)

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following screen (**fig. 169**)

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CURR. NETWORK (**fig. 169**)

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the current network

7) press ESC (**9**): the display will show again the network menu (**fig. 169**)

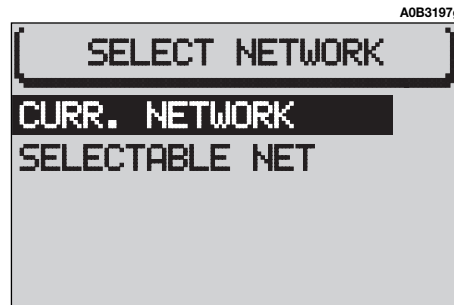


fig. 169

PHONEBOOK

Entering names/phone numbers

To display the names/phone numbers contained in the phone book, proceed as follows:

1) press **↶** (**15**): the display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 170**)

2) press (**13**) relevant to BOOK: the display will show the phonebook menu (**fig. 171**)

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select ADD ENTRY (**fig. 172**)

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the speller to enter the phone number (**fig. 173**)

5) use the speller to enter the phone number: after entering the number, select symbol **↵** and then press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

6) the display will show the speller to enter the name (**fig. 174**): enter and confirm the name as previously described for the phone number

Entered name and phone number will thus be stored. Should the entered name be already contained in the phone book, a message asking if you want to overwrite the stored name will be displayed.

Press the knob/button (**11**) to overwrite.

Press ESC (**9**) to not overwrite.

WARNING The max. length of phone book names (usually max. 16 characters) depends on the SIM card being used. The phone number can consist of max. 20 figures.

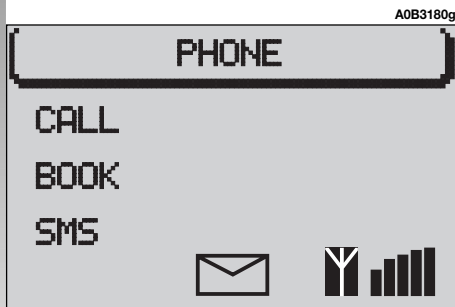


fig. 170



fig. 171



fig. 172

Deleting entries from the phone book

To delete one or more entry from the phone book, proceed as follows:

1) press **↶** (15): the display will show the main phone menu (fig. 170)

2) press (13) relevant to BOOK: the display will show the phone book menu (fig. 171)

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select DELETE ENTRY (fig. 175): the display will show the phone book entries (fig. 176)

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select the entry to be deleted

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will ask for confirmation. Press the knob/button (11) to confirm and delete the entry, otherwise press ESC (9).

Displaying the free space left in the phone book

Use this function to display how many entries can be still stored in the phone book.

Proceed as follows:

1) press **↶** (15): the display will show the main phone menu (fig. 170)

2) press (13) relevant to BOOK: the display will show the phone book menu (fig. 171)



fig. 173



fig. 174



fig. 175


3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select FREE SPACE (**fig. 177**): the display will show the free space left in the phone book

4) press ESC (**9**) to go back to the phone book menu (**fig. 171**)

MESSAGES (SMS)

This system enables to send/receive SMS messages (Short Message Service)

Reading a message

Received messages are shown on the display by symbol  and are accompanied by a beep (can be excluding).


When receiving a message, press the knob/button (**11**) to display it.

To scroll the message, turn the knob/button (**11**).

After reading the message, press ESC (**9**) to store it.

Sending a message

Proceed as follows:

1) press  (**15**): the display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 170**)

2) press (**13**) relevant to SMS: the display will show the SMS menu (**fig. 178**)

3) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select WRITE NEW (**fig. 178**)

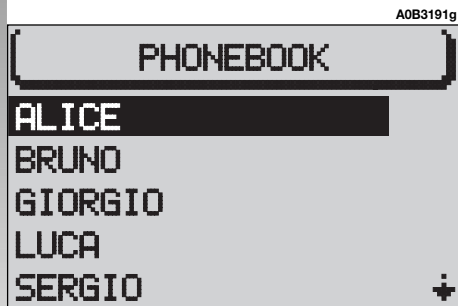


fig. 176



fig. 177

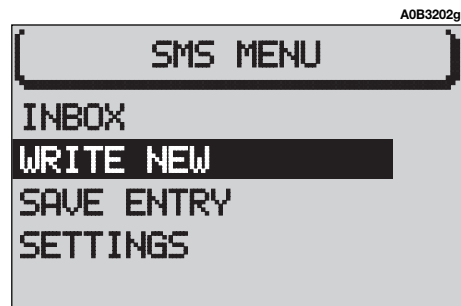


fig. 178

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the speller to enter the message text (**fig. 179**)

5) after writing the text, select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

6) the display will show the screen in (**fig. 180**), to choose if the message shall be sent to a new number of a phone book number

7) turn the knob/button (11) to select NEW (**fig. 180**) if a new number shall be entered

8) use the speller to enter the new number, select symbol ↵ and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

9) if you want to use a phone book number, when at point 7) select BOOK (**fig. 180**)

10) press the knob/button (11) to confirm: the display will show the phone book

11) turn the knob/button (11) to select the required number and then press the knob/button (11) to confirm

After entering the new number or selecting it from the phone book, the display will show the following options.

Select whether to send (SEND), to store (SAVE) or to send the message to both (BOTH) (**fig. 181**).

Selecting SEND or BOTH, the message will be sent and the SMS menu will be displayed. Selecting SAVE, the message will be stored and then the SMS menu will be displayed.

WARNING The message text shall not exceed 160 characters.

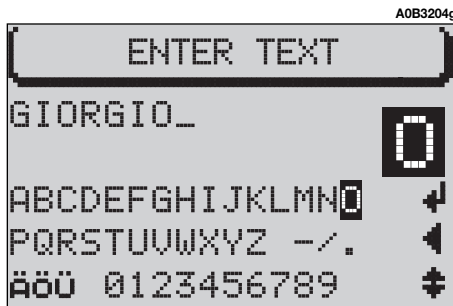


fig. 179

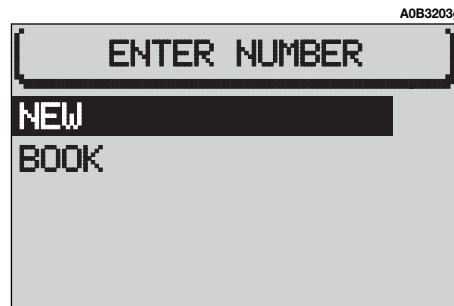


fig. 180

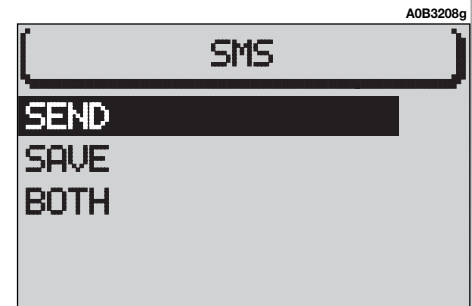


fig. 181

Entering the Provider service number

To send messages, the Provider service number shall be entered.

This number is usually stored on the SIM card and is entered automatically.

To enter the Provider service number again or to change it, proceed as follows:

- 1) press **15**: the display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 170**)
- 2) press **13** relevant to SMS: the display will show the SMS menu (**fig. 178**)

3) turn the knob/button **11** to select **SETTINGS** (**fig. 182**)

4) press the knob/button **11** to confirm

5) turn the knob/button **11** to select **SMSC NUMBER**

6) press the knob/button **11** to confirm: the display will show the speller to enter the Provider service number (**fig. 184**)

7) use the speller to enter the number. After entering the number select symbol **↵** and then press the knob/button **11** to confirm.

The display will show again the SMS menu (**fig. 182**).



fig. 182

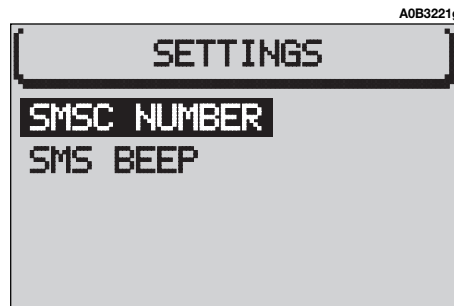


fig. 183



fig. 184

Beep for incoming messages

The beep that indicates each new incoming message can be activated/excluded.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **15**: the display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 170**)
- 2) press **13** relevant to SMS: the display will show the SMS menu (**fig. 182**)
- 3) turn the knob/button **11** to display SETTINGS (**fig. 182**)
- 4) press the knob/button **11** to confirm

5) turn the knob/button **11** to select SMS BEEP (**fig. 183**)

6) press the knob/button **11** to confirm

7) turn the knob/button **11** to select beep ON or OFF (**fig. 185**)

Reading/deleting messages

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press **15**: the display will show the main phone menu (**fig. 170**)
- 2) press **13** relevant to SMS: the display will show the SMS menu (**fig. 178**)
- 3) turn the knob/button **11** to select SAVE ENTRY (**fig. 186**)

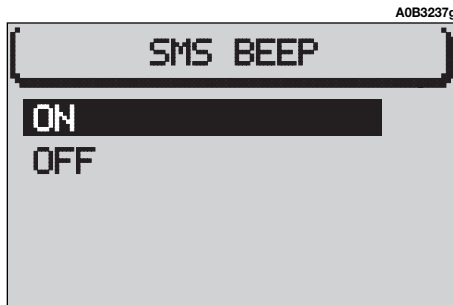


fig. 185

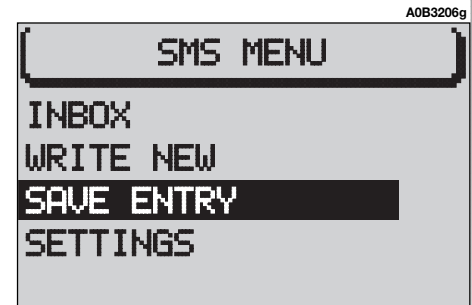


fig. 186

4) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the following options (**fig. 187**): READ (to read again a message), SENT (to read again a message already sent) and UNSENT (to read a message not sent yet)

5) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the required option

6) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the message list

7) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select the message you want to read

8) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the selected message. Turn the knob/button (**11**) to scroll the message quickly

9) after reading the message, press the knob/button (**11**): the display will ask if you want to delete the message.

Press the knob/button (**11**) to delete it, otherwise press ESC (**9**). The display will show again the SMS menu (**fig. 178**).

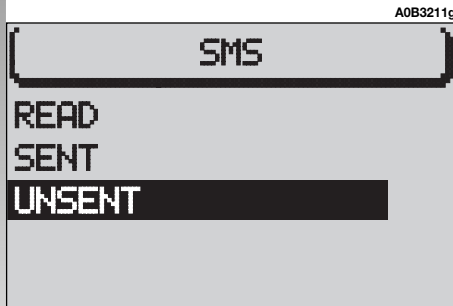


fig. 187

BASIC SETTINGS

The SETTINGS menu allows to adjust the system settings to your needs. Furthermore, with the settings menu of the different audio sources it is possible to set the special audio and navigation functions.

OPENING THE SETTINGS MENU

The SETTINGS menu can be opened from the main menus of the various functions. Use the following buttons to open the main menus:

- press SRC (17) to select Radio, CD or CD-Changer (where fitted) main menus
- press NAV (12) for the main navigation menu.

When the display shows the main menu of one of the audio sources or a function menu is displayed, press twice MEN (10): the display will show the SETTINGS menu (fig. 188)

If audio source SETTINGS menu or NAVIGATION menu is displayed, press MEN (10), the display will show the SETTINGS menu.

The display will show a list of options in the SETTINGS menu (fig. 188).

Proceed as follows to set and select options in the list:

- 1) position the cursor on the required list option turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY

In the SETTINGS menu, you can turn on and off the automatic switchover to night-time display and adjust brightness and contrast (separately for day and night). Furthermore, you can adjust the angle of vision for the route instructions on the display.



fig. 188

Automatic night-time display switchover

Proceed as follows to switch the automatic night-time display switchover function off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DISPLAY (**fig. 188**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DAY/NIGHT (**fig. 189**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to select ON or OFF. The default setting is ON.

Repeat the procedure to switch the automatic switchover function back on.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Angle of vision

Proceed as follows to adjust the angle of vision of the display:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DISPLAY (**fig. 188**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select ANGLE (**fig. 189**)

5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

6) turn the knob/button (**11**) to adjust the angle of vision

7) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

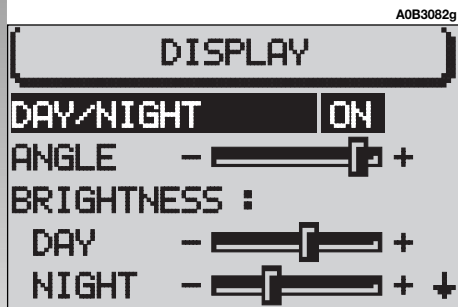


fig. 189

Adjusting display brightness

To adjust display brightness (for night or day), proceed as follows:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DISPLAY (**fig. 188**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select BRIGHTNESS (**fig. 189**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 6) turn the knob/button (**11**) and move the cursor to DAY or NIGHT to adjust brightness
- 7) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm last setting.

Press ESC (**9**) to return to the previous menu.

Adjusting the fade effect

Proceed as follows:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select DISPLAY (**fig. 188**)
- 3) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SPECIAL EFF (**fig. 190**)
- 5) press the knob/button (**11**) to select one of the three different fade effects. Default setting is 0 (no fade).

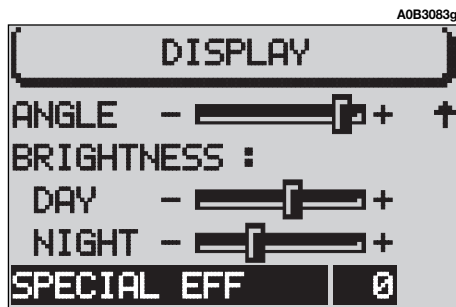


fig. 190

ADJUSTING POWER-ON, TA ANNOUNCEMENT, MESSAGE AND GALA VOLUME

The power-on volume (ACCENS.), the minimum traffic announcement volume (TA-MIN), the minimum volume for voice messages and warnings (NAV-MIN) and the variable volume according to speed function (GALA) can be adjusted in the SETTINGS menu.

WARNING The system volume overrides the SETTINGS volume when it is higher than the minimum set volume.

WARNING The minimum volume is a form of limitation. If the volume was lower than the minimum set volume when the system was switched off this will override the SETTINGS menu.



WARNING

Too high a volume when driving can put the driver's life at risk and that of other people. Therefore the volume should always be adjusted in such a way that it is always possible to hear the noises of the surrounding environment (e.g. horns, ambulance, police sirens, etc.).

Proceed as follows to adjust the volume:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select VOLUME (**fig. 191**)
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select one of the following options (**fig. 192**):
 - POWER-ON (power-on volume);
 - TA-MIN (minimum TA traffic announcement volume);
 - NAVI-MIN (minimum navigation instructions volume);

– GALA (variable volume according to speed)

– PHONE (min. phone volume)

5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

6) Adjust the volume by turning the knob/button (11)

7) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 191

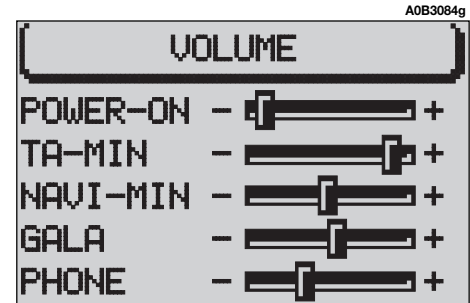


fig. 192

SETTING THE CLOCK

The SETTINGS menu can be used to switch the summer time on and off, adjust the clock format (12 hours/24 hours) and set the time zone referred to Central European Time (MEZ). These settings are required by the sound/navigation system to calculate the discrepancy between system time and GPS transmitted time and, consequently, calculate the actual navigation time.

Selecting the time format

Proceed as follows to select the time format (12 or 24 hour clock):

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select CLOCK
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select SETTINGS
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select TIME FORMAT (**fig. 193**)
- 6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

7) press repeatedly the knob/button (11) to select 12H or 24H

8) press the knob/button (11) for longer than two seconds to confirm the selection.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

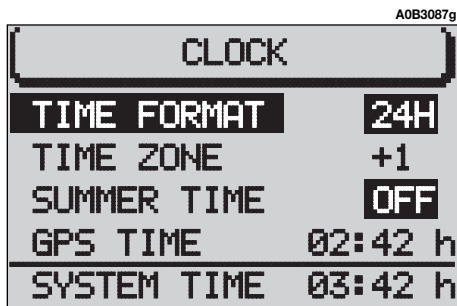


fig. 193

Selecting the time zone

Proceed as follows to change the time zone:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select CLOCK
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select SETTINGS
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select TIME ZONE (**fig. 193**)
- 6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 7) turn the knob/button (11) to set the time zone (example: -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, etc.)
- 8) confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (11).

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.

Switching summer time on and off

The system will automatically switch to summer time when the function is on. Proceed as follows to switch summer time on and off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 192**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select CLOCK
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select SETTINGS
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select SUMMER TIME (**fig. 193**)
- 6) press repeatedly the knob/button (11) to display summer time ON or OFF.

The system time will be automatically adjusted. The message ON or OFF according to the selection will appear on the display.

Switching the main time on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the main time function on and off:

- 1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2) turn the knob/button (11) to select CLOCK
- 3) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 4) turn the knob/button (11) to select MAIN CLOCK (**fig. 194**).
- 5) press repeatedly the knob/button (11) to display ON or OFF

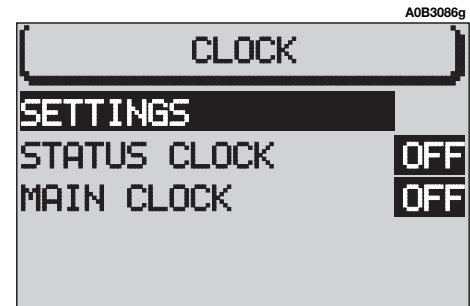


fig. 194

Switching the time status on and off

Proceed as follows to switch the time status function on and off:

- 1** open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CLOCK
- 3** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select STATUS CLOCK
- 5** press the knob/button (**11**) to display ON or OFF

Setting the exact time manually

Proceed as follows to set manually the exact time (e.g.: when no GPS satellite signal is received):

- 1** open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select CLOCK
- 3** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm
- 4** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SETTINGS
- 5** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select SYSTEM TIME
- 6** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: hours will be displayed with reverse writing
- 7** turn the knob/button (**11**) to set hours
- 8** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: minutes will be displayed with reverse writing
- 9** turn the knob/button (**11**) to set minutes
- 10** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm

SELECTING THE LANGUAGE

You can select the language for messages on the display. “Metric” (distances in kilometres) and “imperial” (distances in miles) versions are offered for English

- 1** open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously
- 2** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select LANGUAGE
- 3** press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the display will show the list of the available languages
- 4** select the required language by turning the knob/button (**11**)
- 5** confirm the selection by pressing the knob/button (**11**).

A new language will be loaded. At the end of the loading operation, with the navigation CD inserted in the drive, a confirmation voice message will be heard.


The SETTINGS menu will be then displayed again.

WARNING For certain countries (e.g. Denmark, Sweden and Portugal), the voice messages related to Navigation are in English whereas displayed messages are written in the language of each country.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

The following system calibrations can be made in the INSTALL menu:

- SYSTEM TEST
- CALIBRATION
- GPS STATUS

WARNING The system cannot be calibrated when the lock symbol  is displayed next to INSTALL.



The system can be calibrated at Alfa Romeo Authorised Services only.

SYSTEM TEST

The system test checks the GPS aerial, the correct transmission of reversing signal and correct connection to other systems.

1) open the SETTINGS menu (**fig. 188**) as described previously (see paragraph “Opening the settings menu” in this section)

2) turn the knob/button (**11**) to select INSTALL (**fig. 195**)

3) press the knob/button: (**11**) to confirm



fig. 195

4) turn the knob/button (11) to select SYSTEM TEST (fig. 196)

5) select SENSOR TEST or INTERNAL TEST or CALIBRAT. DATA: the display will show the relevant test results.

The installation menu will appear automatically when the test is done.

Prss ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 196

Calibration after changing the tyres

You may need to re-calibrate the Navigator after changing the tyres. Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press MEN (10) to display the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 195)

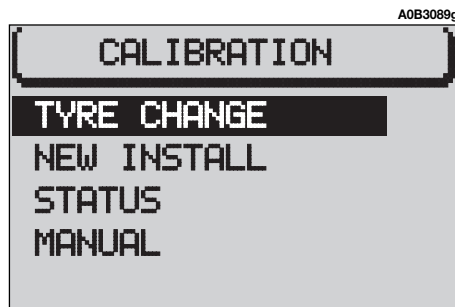


fig. 197

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

5) turn the knob/button (11) to select CALIBRATION (fig. 196)

6) select TYRE CHANGE (fig. 197) and confirm

7) follow the instructions on the screen.

CALIBRATION


Manual system test

The system can be calibrated manually. You will need to drive for 100 metres at a speed not exceeding 30 km/h. The distance must be accurate.

Proceed as follows:

- 1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu
- 2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 195)
- 4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 5) turn the knob/button (11) to select CALIBRATION (fig. 196)
- 6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 7) turn the knob/button (11) to select MANUAL.
- 8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

The editing menu will be displayed. Enter the distance (fig. 198):

- 1) select the first digit of the distance by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 3) continue entering the other digits
- 4) confirm the distance by moving to symbol  turning the knob/button (11)
- 5) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

At this point the instructions to drive the distance will appear on the display. Proceed as follows to start the calibration:

- 1) select START by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm
- 3) drive for 100 metres as shown above
- 4) after 100 metres, stop and select OK or STOP and confirm with the knob/button (11). Press ESC (9) to cancel.



fig. 198

STATUS

Proceed as follows to display the number of GPS satellites which can be received and the car position:

- 1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu
- 2) press MEN (10) to display the SETTINGS menu
- 3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 199)



fig. 199

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm, the display will show the INSTALLATION menu (fig. 200)

5) select GPS STATUS by turning the knob/button (11)

6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

Press ESC (9) to return to the previous menu.



fig. 200

“NEW INSTALL” calibration

Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select INSTALL (fig. 199)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

5) select CALIBRATION and confirm

6) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

7) turn the knob/button (11) to select NEW INSTALL (fig. 201)

8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

9) follow the instructions on the screen and then press the knob/button (11)

Proceed as follows to stop calibration:

1) select CANCEL with the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm: the previous INSTALLATION point is recalled

The system will run a test for which you will need to drive for 8 to 15 km in an area with good GPS reception.

Before starting calibration, delete old calibration values and confirm.

WARNING During the first 25% of the system calibration procedure or when running NEW INSTALL, route guidance will not be available.

WARNING The distance to be driven for calibration depends on various factors, such as the GPS reception quality and route guidance. The kilometre indication is an average value which can be higher or lower in the case of poor reception conditions.

SECURITY

Activating/deactivating the security code

The security code can be activated and deactivated by selecting SAFETY in the SETTINGS menu. When the protection is on, the device can only be switched on by entering a safety code after disconnecting the battery (see paragraph “Entering the security code” in section “Antitheft protection system”).

WARNING This is the only theft-prevention countermeasure of the system. We recommend you activate the security code.

Proceed as follows to activate/deactivate the code:

1) press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (**10**) to open the SETTINGS menu

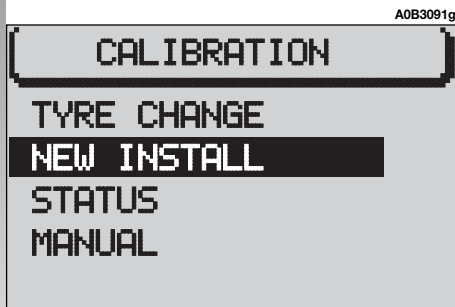


fig. 201

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select SAFETY (fig. 202)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm

5) turn the knob/button (11) to select CODE

6) press the knob/button (11) to select ON or OFF. The default setting is OFF (security code off). In any case, enter the security code

7) select ↓ by turning the knob/button (11)

8) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.



fig. 202

Activating/deactivating the security led

The security led can be activated/deactivated in the CODE-SETUP menu. Proceed as follows:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu

3) select SAFETY by turning the knob/button (11) (fig. 202)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm the selection

5) select LED by turning the knob/button (11) (fig. 203)

6) press the knob/button (11) to select ON or OFF. The default setting is ON (security led active).

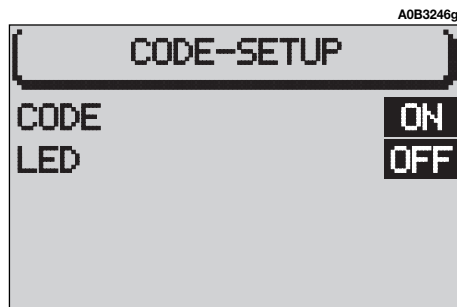


fig. 203

RESETTING DEFAULT SETTINGS (RESET)

To reset the system default settings:

1) press the NAV button (12) to open the main navigation menu

2) press the MEN button (10) to open the SETTINGS menu

3) turn the knob/button (11) to select DEFAULT SET. (fig. 204)

4) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

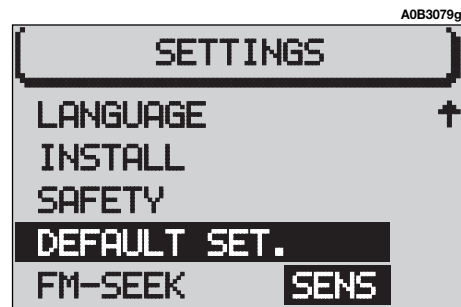


fig. 204

The display will show the following screen according to the different situations: **situation A, B** or **C**:

Situation A) With a navigation CD inserted. A reset (clear) message will appear on the display. The destination memory and the route options will be deleted.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

1) select YES by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

To keep the memory data:

1) select NO by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) to confirm.

The system will automatically go to the following question if there is no navigation CD inserted.

Situation B) A CD sound setting deletion message will appear on the display.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

1) select YES by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds to confirm.

To keep the memory data

1) select END by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds to confirm.

Situation C) Finally, a SETTINGS menu option and sound volume deletion message will appear on the display.

Proceed as follows to clear the memory:

1) select YES by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds to confirm.

To keep the memory data:

1) select NO by turning the knob/button (**11**)

2) press the knob/button (**11**) for longer than two seconds to confirm.

WARNING In all three cases, select SI to reset (clear) the memory. The system will automatically switch off and on again.

WARNING Select NO in any case to automatically return to the SETTINGS menu.

Setting tuner sensitivity

With this function it is possible to set the sensitivity of automatic radio station tuning.

Proceed as follows:

- 1)** press the NAV button (**12**) to open the main navigation menu
- 2)** press the MEN button (**10**) to open the SETTINGS menu
- 3)** turn the knob/button (**11**) to select FM-SEEK (**fig. 205**)
- 4)** press repeatedly the knob/button (**11**) to select BEST or SENS.

The default setting is BEST.

BEST: only stations with excellent reception are sought (i.e. no disturbance). Use this function when travelling in an area with a large number of broadcasters.

SENS: all the stations are sought. Use this function when travelling in an area with a small number of broadcasters.



fig. 205

ANTITHEFT PROTECTION SYSTEM

GENERAL INFORMATION

The system is equipped with a four-digit secret security code.

This ensures that the system cannot be used if it is removed from the dashboard (i.e. stolen).

CODE CARD

This card (**fig. 206**) certifies that you are the owner of the system. The model, serial number and secret code are printed on the card.

WARNING Keep the card in a safe place. You will need the information to report theft to the police. The card is required whenever the battery or power supply is disconnected. You will need to enter the secret code after reconnecting the battery or the power supply.

ENTERING THE SECURITY CODE

Enter the security code when you switch the system on after cutting off the power supply (disconnecting the battery, removing the device, blown fuse, etc.) (**fig. 207**).

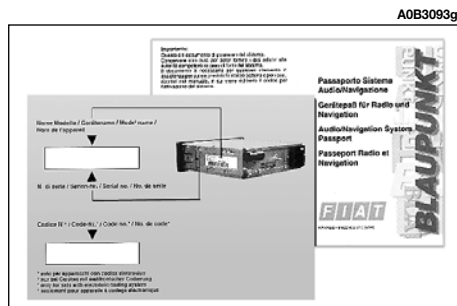


fig. 206



fig. 207

Proceed as follows to enter the security code:

- 1) select the first code digit by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) confirm the first digit by pressing the knob/button (11)
- 3) continue with the other three digits to complete the security code.

Proceed as follows if you make a mistake:

- 1) position the cursor on ◀ (fig. 207) by turning the knob/button (11)
- 2) press the knob/button (11) to confirm.

When the code is complete, position the cursor on symbol ↵ and confirm with the knob/button (11). The device will switch to radio mode.

WARNING You can repeat code entry if you make a mistake. The device will however lock out for one hour after the third attempt to prevent entering the code by attempts. Keep the Navigator on for one hour before entering the code again. The timeout (always one hour) will start from zero again if the battery is disconnected during this period of time.

Deactivating/activating the security code

The security code can be deactivated, see paragraph "Security" in section "Basic settings".

TECHNICAL DATA

The system has a power output max of 4x20W. The functions and specifications are illustrated in the following paragraphs.

RADIO

- PLL tuning (Phase Locked Loop) in the FM/MW wavebands.
- RDS (Radio Data System) with TA (Traffic Announcement), EON (Enhanced Other Network), Radiotext (information on the type of programme or broadcast piece name display), REG (Regional Programmes) functions.
- (Radio Data System) alternative frequency tuning.
- Automatic/manual station tuning.
- Manual storage of 30 stations: 24 in FM waveband (6 in FM1, 6 in FM2 and 6 in FMT) and 6 in MW waveband.
- Preselection scanning.

- PTY function: for displaying radio station programme type (if broadcast), e.g. POP, ROCK etc.

- SHARX function: for reducing FM interference.

- SCAN function: for scanning all stations which can be received in the selected frequency waveband.

- TIM function (Traffic Information Memory): automatic vocal storage of 14 traffic messages having max. overall length equal to or lower than 4 minutes

- TMC function (Traffic Message Channel): for listening to traffic message channels

- AUTOSTORE function: automatic storage of 6 stations in the devoted FM band.

- Automatic Stereo/Mono selection.

- T-STORE (Travelstore): automatic storage of the 6 stations with the strongest signal in the FM band

COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND CD Changer

- Select track (forwards/backwards).
- Fast play (forwards/backwards).
- MIX function: random track playback.
- SCAN function: for playing ten seconds of each track on the CD.
- REPEAT function: for repeating the track.
- Programmable track sequence.
- CD Name function: for allocating names to CDs.



For installation and respective connections contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services exclusively.



WARNING

Multimedia CDs contain sound and data tracks. Playing these CDs can cause noise loud enough to jeopardise road safety and damage final stages and speakers.

AUDIO

- Separate bass/treble settings.
- Right/left and front/rear channel balance.
- Automatic LOUDNESS function.

SATELLITE NAVIGATION

- Voice messages for the route to be followed.
- Driving advice, distance and estimated time required to reach the destination on the display.
- Possibility of entering special or different destinations.
- Possibility of storing destinations.

TARGASYS SERVICES

- Access to **Taragsys** services:
 - “Infomobility” services (Connect, Follow me function, (Message list)
 - “Medical advice” service
 - “Road assistance” service

TELEPHONE

- Handfree set (using the speakers fitted on the car)
- Phone book
- Sending/receiving short text messages (SMS)
- Enabling SIM card reading

SYSTEM TECHNICAL DATA

Speakers

The system consists of:

- 2 front tweeters (**A-fig. 208**) 30 W max. power each.
- 2 front (**B-fig. 208**) and two rear speakers (**A-fig. 209**) 165 mm diameter (2 front and 2 rear), 40W power.

Hi-Fi Bose system (where fitted)

The system consists of:

- 2 front coaxial two-way speakers (**A - fig. 210**), 165 mm diameter and built-in tweeter ;
- 2 rear full range speakers (**A-fig. 209**), 165 mm diameter;
- 1 subwoofer, 225 mm diameter, located on the rear parcel shelf (Saloon versions)
- 1 subwoofer, 130 mm diameter, located on the left side of the boot (Sportwagon versions)

The system features also a high power amplifier (200W max. power) (located under the rear parcel shelf for Saloon versions and built into the subwoofer inside the boot for Sportwagon versions) with 5 channels and HI-FI equaliser.

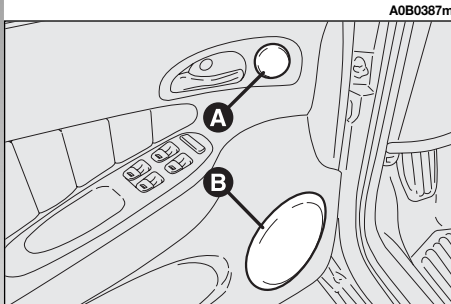


fig. 208

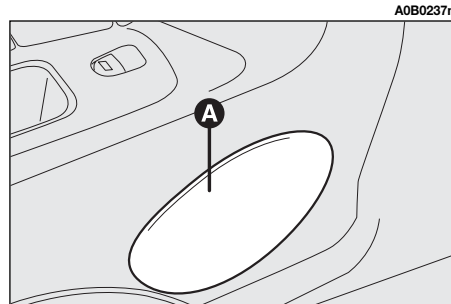


fig. 209

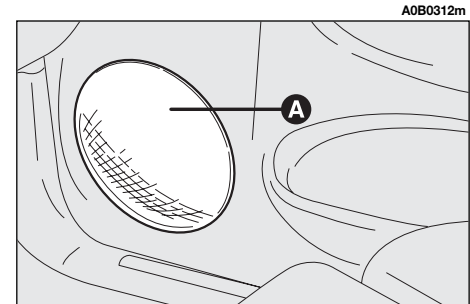


fig. 210

CD-Changer magazine (where fitted)

The car can be fitted with a CD-Changer for 5 discs, located inside the oddment compartment on the left side of the boot (Sportwagon versions) (**A-fig. 211**) or for 10 discs (with CD NAME function), located on the left side of the boot (saloon versions) (**A-fig. 212**).

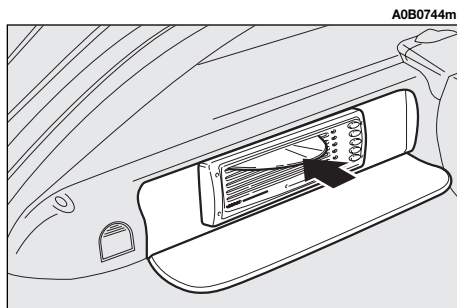


fig. 211

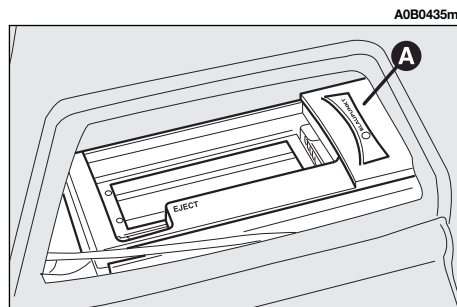


fig. 212

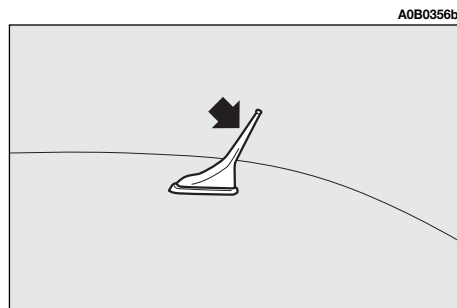


fig. 213

Fuses

The Connect Nav is protected by a 10A fuse, see (**fig. 214**).

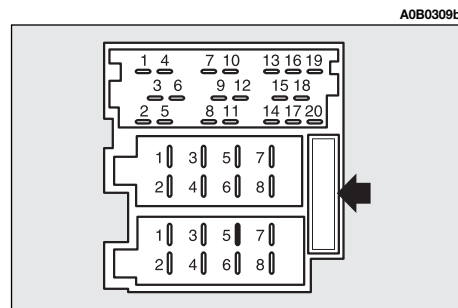


fig. 214









SERVICE

AFTER SALES

ASSISTENZA TECNICA - INGEGNERIA ASSISTENZIALE

Viale Alfa Romeo 20020 Arese (MI) - Italia

Fiat Auto S.p.A.

Publication no. 60431332 - 2nd Edition - 09/2004

Printed by Satiz - Turin (Italy)

All rights reserved. Reproduction, even partial, is strictly prohibited without written permission from Fiat Auto S.p.A.

Coordinamento Editoriale Satiz - Torino

ENGLISH

Alfa Romeo 
SERVICE